

GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES, ENGLISH and FRENCH;

CONTAINING

- | | |
|--|--|
| I. All the FUNDAMENTAL
RULES of <i>French Construc-
tion</i> , digested in a plain,
easy, and very concise
Order. | III. FRENCH Exercises, with
<i>Directions</i> , serving to ex-
plain divers Particles and
Difficulties of the French
Language. |
| II. IDIOMATICAL Exercises
on Subjects both <i>entertain-
ing</i> and <i>instructive</i> . | IV. SENTENCES, calculated
to point out some intricate
<i>Idioms</i> and <i>Gallicisms</i> . |

TO WHICH IS ADDED,
AN INTRODUCTION TO FRENCH POETRY.

By Mr. P O R N Y,
FRENCH-MASTER AT ETON-COLLEGE.

THE FOURTH EDITION, CORRECTED.

L O N D O N,
Printed for J. NOURSE, in the Strand; and G. ROBINSON,
in Paternoster-Row.

MDCCLXXX.

Edue T 215 17. 80. 12

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

OUT OF

GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON

JANUARY 23, 1924

P R E F A C E.

NOTHING is a greater discouragement to persons desirous to attain a perfect knowledge of the French Language, than their wanting some *plain and easy Rules* to direct and enable them to speak or write that Language, on all occasions, with accuracy.

It was this consideration which engaged me in the undertaking of this Book; and whether I have been happy enough to succeed in my design of putting that *in a clearer light, and more regular order*, which has been already attempted by others, is left to the decision of the judicious Reader; the method which I have pursued, for the execution of it, is as follows:

FIRST, I have laid down the *whole Rule of Construction* in terms as intelligible as possible, and have afterwards illustrated it by an easy and concise example, that it might be the better committed to Memory.

SECONDLY, Practical Phrases are subjoined to each Example, by way of Exercise, to make the *young Tyro* understand the Rule well, and digest it thoroughly, before he passes to another.

P R E F A C E.

THIRDLY, Because, at the beginning, Learners cannot be supposed to have a perfect Grammar in their memories, next to the signification of words, the *Genders, Numbers, and respective Conjugations* are, when necessary, minutely specified: and, as an additional help, they will find at the end of the Introduction an *Alphabetical List of the French Irregular verbs*, contained in this elementary Book, with all their inflections.

FOURTHLY, I have annexed to the Construction of each Part of Speech a *Recapitulatory Exercise*, which, by serving as a practical Summary of the preceding Rules, will refresh the memory of young Beginners, and remind them of those they might have forgotten.

FIFTHLY, Thinking it necessary, that through the whole *no Rules should be anticipated*, I have often introduced either incoherent Sentences, or the right construction of several words used together, rather than put Learners upon the practice of a Rule they have not yet arrived at.

THUS led gradually, as it were by the hand, from *known Parts to those that are unknown*, they will, I hope, proceed in their compositions with profit and chearfulness, having nothing to encounter with but what they have both Rule and Example for, to work by, before their Eyes.

THE CONTENTS.

PART I.

G RAMMATICAL Introduction	—	page i
<i>Methodical Table of all the Pronouns</i>	—	iv
<i>Concise distribution of the Regular Verbs</i>	—	vi
<i>Alphabetical List of the Irregular Verbs</i>	—	ix
<i>Explanation of the different Particles</i>	—	xxxv
<i>Rules for the Construction of Articles</i>	—	I
<i>The Definite Article</i>	—	2
<i>The Indefinite Article</i>	—	3
<i>The Partitive Article</i>	—	ib.
<i>Remarks on the preceding Articles</i>	—	5
<i>Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules</i>	—	7
<i>Rules for the Construction of Substantives</i>	—	8
<i>Substantives denoting Commodity</i>	—	ib.
<i>Substantives denoting Titles</i>	—	9
<i>Substantives denoting Measures</i>	—	ib.
<i>Proper names of Persons, &c.</i>	—	10
<i>Remarks on several Substantives</i>	—	11
<i>Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules</i>	—	12
		<i>Rules</i>

C O N T E N T S.

<i>Rules for the Construction of Adjectives</i>	—	p. 13
<i>Verbal Adjectives</i>	—	14
<i>The Adjective Dear</i>	—	15
<i>The Adjective New</i>	—	16
<i>Adjectives of Number</i>	—	17
<i>Adjectives of Order</i>	—	ib.
<i>Comparison of Adjectives</i>	—	19
<i>Remarks on peculiar Adjectives</i>	—	20
<i>Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules</i>	—	22
<i>Rules for the Construction of Pronouns</i>	—	23
<i>Personal Pronouns</i>	—	ib.
<i>Conjunctive Pronouns</i>	—	26
<i>Possessive Pronouns</i>	—	30
<i>Absolute Pronouns</i>	—	33
<i>Demonstrative Pronouns</i>	—	35
<i>Relative Pronouns</i>	—	38
<i>Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules</i>	—	42
<i>Rules for the Construction of French Verbs</i>	—	43
<i>Verbs used Interrogatively</i>	—	47
<i>Verbs used Negatively</i>	—	49
<i>Reflective Verbs</i>	—	52
<i>The Infinitive Mood</i>	—	56
<i>The Participles</i>	—	61
<i>The Indicative Mood</i>	—	66
<i>The Subjunctive Mood</i>	—	69
<i>The Imperative Mood</i>	—	72
<i>Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules</i>	—	73
		<i>Rules</i>

C O N T E N T S.

Rules for the Government of Verbs	—	p. 74
Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules	—	80
Rules for the Construction of Impersonal Verbs	—	81
Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules	—	85
Rules for the Construction of Particles	—	86
Adverbial Particles	—	87
Prepositive Particles	—	88
Conjunctive Particles	—	92
Interjective Particles	—	97
Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules	—	98

P A R T II.

Directions for Translating Idiomatical Exercises	—	99
On Knowledge	—	101
On Languages	—	102
On Geography	—	103
On Politeness	—	104
On Friendship	—	105
On Discretion	—	106
On Temperance	—	107
On Chearfulness	—	108
On Fear	—	109
On Indolence	—	110
On Ambition	—	111
On Gaming	—	112
On Happiness	—	113
Character of a Rich Man	—	114
Character of a Poor Man	—	115
Vain Hope frustrated	—	116

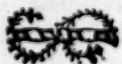
C O N T E N T S.

P A R T I I I.

<i>French and English Exercises</i>	—	p. 119
<i>The Use and Signification of On</i>	— —	120
<i>Of the Particle Que</i>	—	122
<i>Of the Particle Y</i>	— —	124
<i>Of the Particle En</i>	— —	126
<i>Of the Words Le and Ne</i>	—	127
<i>Of the Impersonal Il y a</i>	—	129
<i>Of the Impersonal Il faut</i>	—	132
<i>Of the Impersonal Il fait</i>	—	136

P A R T I V.

<i>Various FRENCH IDIOMS illustrated</i>	—	137
<i>The following GALLICISMS exemplified</i>	—	149
<i>D'aujourd'hui en huit</i>	—	ib.
<i>Avoir la bonté de</i>	— —	150
<i>Aimer mieux</i>	— —	ib.
<i>Avoir mal à</i>	— —	151
<i>C'en est fait de moi</i>	— —	ib.
<i>Demeurer en repos</i>	—	152
<i>Il ne faut pas s'étonner</i>	—	ib.
<i>Je foudraierois pouvoir</i>	—	153
<i>Il ne tient qu'à vous de</i>	—	ib.
<i>Il me tarde de</i>	— —	154
<i>Trouver à redire à, &c.</i>	—	ib.
<i>S'en prendre à</i>	— —	155
<i>An INTRODUCTION to FRENCH POETRY</i>		157



INTRODUCTION.

There are six different sorts of Words usually reckoned in Modern Languages, distinguished by the Names of

ARTICLES, SUBSTANTIVES, ADJECTIVES,
PRONOUNS, VERBS, and PARTICLES.

AR TICLES are *Definite*, *Indefinite*, or *Partitive*. The *definite* Article is that which has a particular and determined signification; as, (the) *le*, *la*, &c.

The *indefinite* Article, which has a vague Sense, means *con*, with some reference to more; as, (a) *un*, &c.

The *partitive* Article expresses a part or portion of any whole substance or species; as, (some) *du*, *de la*, &c.

Examples shewing their various significations in French.

EXAMPLE I. Of the *Definite* ARTICLE.

Singular Number.				Plural Number.	
	M.	F.	*		C.
	the,	<i>le</i> ,	<i>la</i> ,	the	<i>les</i> ,
of or } from }	the,	<i>du</i> ,	<i>de la</i> ,	the	<i>des</i> ,
	to the,	<i>au</i> ,	<i>à la</i> ,	to the	<i>aux</i> .

EXAMPLE II.

Of the *Indefinite* Article.

	M.	F.	*
	a,	<i>un</i> ,	<i>une</i> .
of or } from }	a,	<i>d'un</i> ,	<i>d'une</i> .
	to a,	<i>à un</i> ,	<i>à une</i> .

EXAMPLE III.

Of the *Partitive* Article.

	M.	F.	*
	some,	<i>du</i> ,	<i>de la</i> ,
	to some,	<i>à du</i> ,	<i>à de la</i> ,
	some, (plural)	<i>des</i> .	C.

* These Articles are to be used in the Singular before *Substantives* and *Adjectives* beginning with a *Vowel* or an *h* not aspirated.

SUBSTANTIVES are *Common*, *Abstract* or *Proper*.

The *Common* are such as are applicable and common to all objects of the same kind; as, *King, Queen, Man, Woman, House, Town, &c.*

The *Abstract* are only the objects of the Understanding, being not perceptible by the Senses; as, *Hope, Faith, Love, Goodness, Vice, &c.*

The *Proper* serve to distinguish the name of some particular person, place, or thing; as *George, Thomas; London, York; January, February, &c.*

*The subsequent Examples will shew how to decline * them.*

EXAMPLE I.

Of a Substantive with the *definite* Article.

Singular.		Plural.	
of or from }	the King, <i>le Roi</i> ;	of or from }	the Kings, <i>les Rois.</i>
	the King, <i>du Roi</i> ;		the Kings, <i>des Rois.</i>
	to the King, <i>au Roi</i> ;		to the Kings, <i>aux Rois.</i>

EXAMPLE II.

With the *indefinite* Article.

Singular.	
of or from }	a Queen, <i>une Reine.</i>
	a Queen, <i>d'une Reine.</i>
	to a Queen, <i>à une Reine.</i>

EXAMPLE III.

With the *partitive* Article.

Plural.	
of or from }	Some Paper, <i>du Papier</i> , m.
	Some Wax, <i>de la Cire</i> , f.
	Some Pens, <i>des Plumes</i> , c.

EXAMPLE IV.

Of *proper* Substantives with *prepositive* Particles.

George, <i>George.</i>		London, <i>Londres.</i>	
of or from }	George, <i>de George.</i>	of or from }	London, <i>de Londres.</i>
	to George, <i>à George.</i>		to London, <i>à Londres.</i>

* The several circumstances of English and French Substantives are denoted, by an Article, and not by Cases as in Latin.

ADJECTIVES are so called from their being added to Substantives, and serve to express the Quality, Form, Colour, or any other Accident of the Substantives to which they refer; as *good, young, old, &c.*

Without a Substantive they can neither make a full sense, nor convey a proper idea to the mind; but, being joined to a Substantive, are then perfectly understood.

The following Examples will sufficiently illustrate this.

E X A M P L E I.

Singular Number, Masculine.

	the Good man,	<i>le Bon homme.</i>
of or from }	the Good man,	<i>du Bon homme.</i>
	to the Good man,	<i>au Bon homme.</i>

E X A M P L E II.

Singular Number, Feminine.

	a Young girl,	<i>une Jeune fille.</i>
of or from }	a Young girl,	<i>d'une Jeune fille.</i>
	to a Young girl,	<i>à une Jeune fille.</i>

E X A M P L E III.

Singular Number, Feminine.

	an Old house,	<i>une Vieille maison.</i>
of or from }	an Old house,	<i>d'une Vieille maison.</i>
	to an Old house,	<i>à une Vieille maison.</i>

Observe that the signification of Adjectives is lessened or increased when different participations of a Quality, Form, Colour, &c. are compared together; hence arise what is generally called the *Degrees of comparison* *, viz. the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

* English Adjectives form, in general, their comparison by an additional termination, but in French we make use of particles.

iv THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

PRONOUNS are Parts of Speech, used to supply the place of *Names* of Men, Women, and Things, to avoid their being repeated, every time there is occasion to speak of them; see the Practical Grammar, p. 62.

In the following classes each sort is fully particularised.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.	
I,	- - <i>je.</i>	We,	- - <i>nous.</i>
thou,	- - <i>tu.</i>	ye, or you*	<i>vous.</i>
it {	he, - <i>il.</i>	they, - {	<i>ils, m.</i>
	she, - <i>elle.</i>		<i>elles, f.</i>

CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.	
me,	- - <i>moi</i> or <i>me.</i>	us,	- - - <i>nous.</i>
thee,	- - <i>toi</i> or <i>te,</i>	ye or you,*	<i>vous.</i>
it {	him, - <i>le, m. elle, la, f.</i>	them, {	<i>eux, m. elles, f.</i>
	her, - <i>lui, se, soi, c.</i>		<i>leur, se, les, c.</i>

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.	
my,	<i>mon, m. ma, f.</i>	my,	- - <i>mes, c.</i>
thy,	<i>ton, m. ta, f.</i>	thy,	- - <i>tes, c.</i>
its {	his, - - <i>son, m.</i>	his, }	<i>ses, c.</i>
	her, - - <i>sa, f.</i>		
our,	- - <i>notre, c.</i>	our,	- - <i>nos, c.</i>
your,	- - <i>votre, c.</i>	your,	- - <i>vos, c.</i>
their,	- - <i>leur, c.</i>	their,	- - <i>leurs, c.</i>

* This Pronoun is through custom, which gives law to Grammar, used either for the Plural or Singular Number.

ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.	
mine, -	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{le mien, m.} \\ \text{la mienne, f.} \end{array} \right.$	mine,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{les miens, m.} \\ \text{les miennes, f.} \end{array} \right.$
thine, -	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{le tien, m.} \\ \text{la tienne, f.} \end{array} \right.$	thine,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{les tiens, m.} \\ \text{les tiennes, f.} \end{array} \right.$
his or hers,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{le sien, m.} \\ \text{la sienne, f.} \end{array} \right.$	his or hers,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{les siens, m.} \\ \text{les siennes, f.} \end{array} \right.$
ours, le nôtre, m.	la nôtre, f.	ours, -	les nôtres, c.
yours, le vôtre, m.	la vôtre, f.	yours, -	les vôtres, c.
theirs, le leur, m.	la leur, f.	theirs, -	les leurs, c.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.	
this, that,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ce \& cet, m.} \\ \text{cette, f.} \end{array} \right.$	these, those,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ces, c.} \\ \text{ceux, m.} \\ \text{celles, f.} \end{array} \right.$
this, -	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{celui-ci, m.} \\ \text{celle-ci, m.} \\ \text{ce-ci, f.} \end{array} \right.$	these, -	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ceux-ci, m.} \\ \text{celles-ci, f.} \end{array} \right.$
that, -	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{celui-là, m.} \\ \text{celle-là, f.} \\ \text{ce-là, c.} \end{array} \right.$	those,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ceux-là, m.} \\ \text{celles-là, f.} \end{array} \right.$

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.	
who, or that, -	qui, c.	who, or that, -	qui, c.
whom, or that,	que, c.	whom, or that,	que, c.
whose, - -	dont, c.	whose, - -	dont, c.
which, lequel, m.	laquelle, f.	which, les quels, m.	les quelles, f.
what *, quel, m.	quelle, f.	what, quels, m.	quelles, f.

* Besides the annexed signification of this pronoun, it is also rendered by *que, quoi, ce qui* and *ce que*; see its construction p. 29.

VI THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

VERBS* are distributed into Moods, Tenses, and Numbers, called *Conjugation*, of which there are four sorts in French; but irregularities being found in some of them, we distinguish them by *Regular* and *Irregular* verbs.

Regular Verbs are conjugated after the following Models.

INFINIT.

PARTICIPLES.

(1) <i>Donn - er</i>		ant ;	é	m,	ée	f,	s	pl.
(2) <i>Pun - ir</i>		issant ;	i	m,	ie	f,	s	pl.
(3) <i>Re - cevoir</i>		cevant ;	çu	m,	çue	f,	s	pl.
(4) <i>Vend - re</i>		ant ;	u	m,	ue	f,	s	pl.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Donn - er</i>	<i>e es, e ;</i>	<i>ons, ez, ent.</i>
<i>Pun - ir</i>	<i>is, is, it ;</i>	<i>issons issez, issent.</i>
<i>Re - cevoir</i>	<i>çois, çois, çoit ;</i>	<i>cevons, cevez, çoivent.</i>
<i>Vend - re</i>	<i>s, s, —</i>	<i>ons, ez, ent.</i>

Imperfect.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Donn - er</i>	<i>ois, ois, oit ;</i>	<i>ions, iez, oient.</i>
<i>Pun - ir</i>	<i>issois, issois, issoit ;</i>	<i>issions, issiez, issoient.</i>
<i>Rece - voir</i>	<i>vois, vois, voit ;</i>	<i>vions, viez, voient.</i>
<i>Vend - re</i>	<i>ois, ois, oit ;</i>	<i>ions, iez, oient.</i>

Preterite.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Donn - er</i>	<i>ai, as, a ;</i>	<i>ames, ates, érent.</i>
<i>Pun - ir</i>	<i>is, is, it ;</i>	<i>imes, ites, irent.</i>
<i>Re - cevoir</i>	<i>çus, çus, çut ;</i>	<i>çumes, çutes, çurent.</i>
<i>Vend - re</i>	<i>is, is, it ;</i>	<i>imes, ites, irent.</i>

* The etymology of this part of speech, and the distinctions it admits of are fully described in the *Practical Gram.* page 74.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH. VII

Future Tense.

INFINIT.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Donn</i>	-	<i>er</i>	<i>erai, eras, era;</i>	<i>erons, erez, eront.</i>
<i>Pun</i>	-	<i>ir</i>	<i>irai, iras, ira;</i>	<i>irons, irez, iront.</i>
<i>Rece</i>	-	<i>voir</i>	<i>vrai, vras, vra;</i>	<i>vrons, vrez, vront.</i>
<i>Vend</i>	-	<i>re</i>	<i>rai, ras, ra;</i>	<i>rons, rez, ront.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Donn</i>	-	<i>er</i>	<i>e, es, e;</i>	<i>ions, iez, ent.</i>
<i>Pun</i>	-	<i>ir</i>	<i>isse, isses, e;</i>	<i>issions, issiez, issent.</i>
<i>Re</i>	-	<i>cevoir</i>	<i>çoive, çoives, çoive;</i>	<i>cevions, ceviez, çoivent.</i>
<i>Vend</i>	-	<i>re</i>	<i>e, es, e;</i>	<i>ions, iez, ent.</i>

Imperfect.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Donn</i>	-	<i>er</i>	<i>erois, erois, eroit;</i>	<i>erions, eriez, eroient.</i>
<i>Pun</i>	-	<i>ir</i>	<i>irois, irois, iroit;</i>	<i>irions, iriez, iroient.</i>
<i>Rece</i>	-	<i>cevoir</i>	<i>vrais, vrais, vroit;</i>	<i>vriions, vriez, vroient.</i>
<i>Vend</i>	-	<i>re</i>	<i>rois, rois, roit;</i>	<i>rions, riez, roient.</i>

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Donn</i>	-	<i>er</i>	<i>asse, asses, ât;</i>	<i>assions, assiez, assent.</i>
<i>Pun</i>	-	<i>ir</i>	<i>isse, isses, ît;</i>	<i>issions, issiez, issent.</i>
<i>Re</i>	-	<i>cevoir</i>	<i>çusse, çusses, çût;</i>	<i>çussions, çussiez, çussent.</i>
<i>Vend</i>	-	<i>re</i>	<i>isse, isses, ît;</i>	<i>issions, issiez, issent.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Donn</i>	-	<i>er</i>	— <i>e*, e;</i>	<i>ons, ez, ent.</i>
<i>Pun</i>	-	<i>ir</i>	— <i>is, isse;</i>	<i>issions, issiez, issent.</i>
<i>Re</i>	-	<i>cevoir</i>	— <i>çois, çoive;</i>	<i>cevons, cevez, çoivent.</i>
<i>Vend</i>	-	<i>re</i>	— <i>s, e;</i>	<i>ons, ez, ent.</i>

* To this Termination must be added an *s*, when it is followed by either of the Particles *y* or *en*. Exam. *donnes-y; donnees-en, &c.*

viii THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

Besides the foregoing method of conjugating Verbs, there is another, which is used to express an *action* returning upon the *agent* that produces it; as, *se blesser*, to hurt one's self; *je me blesse*, I hurt myself, &c. Verbs thus conjugated are called *Reflective Verbs**: It must be observed, that they don't form their compound-tenses in French with *avoir*, but with the auxiliary verb *être*; Ex.

INFINIT. To rise, *Se lever*; *se levant*; *levé m, e f.*

INDICATIVE, 1. Affirmatively.

Singular. *Je me lève*; *tu te lèves*; *il se lève.*

Plural. *Nous nous levons*; *vous vous levez*; *ils se lèvent.*

2. Interrogatively.

Me levé-je; *te le lèves-tu*; *se lève-t-il?*

Nous levons-nous; *vous levez-vous*; *se lèvent-ils?*

3. Negatively.

Je ne me lève pas; *tu ne te lèves pas*, &c.

Nous ne nous levons pas; *vous ne vous levez pas*, &c.

4. Interrogatively and Negatively.

Ne me levé-je pas; *ne te lèves-tu pas*, &c.

Ne nous levons-nous pas; *ne vous levez-vous pas*, &c.

COMPOUND-TENSES.

1. *Je me suis levé*; *tu t'es levé*; *il s'est levé*, &c.

2. *Me suis-je levé*; *t'es-tu levé*; *s'est-il levé?* &c.

3. *Je ne me suis pas levé*; *tu ne t'es pas levé*; &c.

4. *Ne me suis-je pas levé*; *ne t'es-tu pas levé*; &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Affirm. *Lève-toi*; *qu'il se lève*; *qu'elle se lève*;

Levons-nous; *levez-vous*; *qu'ils se lèvent.*

Negat. *Ne te lèves pas*; *qu'il ne se lève pas*; &c.

Ne nous levons pas; *ne vous levez pas*; &c.

* We have another sort of verbs called *Reciprocal*, which are also conjugated with two Pronouns; but with this difference, that they are never used in the singular Number; as; *S'entr'aimer*.

ALPHABETICAL LIST

O F

The French irregular Verbs contained in this Book.

THE irregularities of these verbs fall chiefly upon either the Present, Preterite or Future Tenses; and as their conjugations appear to learners so intricate that they seldom acquire them by memory, I will therefore insert, in an alphabetical order, those that are dispersed through the different English exercises of this book, that they may be readily found, as occasion requires.

A C Q

- Abattre, (4 ir.) *To pull down*, see—Battre.
 Absténir, (2 ir.) *To abstain*, see—Tenir.
 Accourir, (2 ir.) *To run to*, see—Courir.
 Accueillir, (2 ir.) *To welcome*, see—Cueillir.
 Acquérir*, (2 ir.) *To acquire*, acquérant, acquis *m, e f.*

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

- Pres.* Acqu-iers, iers, iert; Acqu-érieurs, ériez, ièrent.
Imp. Acquér-ois, ois, oit; Acquér-ions, iez, oient,
Pret. Acqu-is, is, it; Acqu-imes, ites, irent.
Fut. Acquer-rai, ras, ra; Acquer-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

- Pres.* Acqu-ière, ières, ière; Acqu-érieurs, ériez, ièrent.
Imp. Acquer-rois, rois, roit; Acquer-rions, riez, roient.
Pret. Acqu-isse, isses, it; Acquis-sions, siez, sent.
Imperat.—Acqu-iers, ière; Acqu-érons, érez, ièrent.

• Authors are divided about the spelling of this word. *Danet*, and many others, who stick to the etymology of words, write it with a *c*; but *Richelet* and several more learned men use no *c*.

Admettre, (4 ir.) *To admit*, see—Mettre.
Aller, (1 ir.) *To go*, allant, allé *m*, *e f*°.

INDICAT.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i> Vaïs, vas, va ; Allons, allez, vont.	
<i>Imp.</i> All-ois, ois, oit ; All-ions, iez, oient.	
<i>Pret.</i> All-ai, as, a ; All-ames, ates, érent.	
<i>Fut.</i> Ir-ai, as, a ; Ir-ons, ez, ont.	

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i> Aill-e, es, e ; Allions, alliez, aillent.	
<i>Imp.</i> Ir-ois, ois, oit ; Ir-ions, iez, oient.	
<i>Pret.</i> All-asse, asses, ât ; All-ussions, assiez, assent.	
<i>Imperat.</i> —Va, aille ; Allons, allez, aillent.	
Apartenir, (2 ir) <i>To belong</i> , see,—Tenir.	
Aprendre, (4 ir) <i>To learn</i> , see,—Prendre.	
Affaillir, (2 ir) <i>To assault</i> , see,—Tressaillir.	
Asséoir, (3 ir) <i>To sit down</i> , Asséyant, assis <i>m</i> , <i>e f</i> .	

INDICAT.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i> Ass-ieds, ieds, ied ; éyons, éyez, éyent.	
<i>Imp.</i> Asséy-ois, ois, oit ; ions, iez, oient.	
<i>Pret.</i> Ass-is, is, it ; imes, ites, irent.	
<i>Fut.</i> Alléye-rai, ras, ra ; rons, rez, ront.	

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i> Asséy-e, es, e ; ons, ez, ent.	
<i>Imp.</i> Asséye-rois, rois, roit ; rions, riez, roient.	
<i>Pret.</i> Ass-isse, isses, ât ; issions, issiez, issent.	
<i>Imperat.</i> —Ass-ieds, éye ; Asséy-ons, ez, ent.	

* The only Derivative this verb has is *s'en aller*, which is conjugated like a reflexed verb, Exam. Je m'en vais, tu t'en vas, &c. But its Imperative is conjugated thus ; Va-t-en, qu'il s'en-aille ; &c.

Astreindre, (4 ir) *To restrain.*—*The conjugation of this verb is formed, like that of Craindre.*

Atteindre, (4 ir) *To reach,* see—Ceindre.

Avoir, (3 ir) *To have,* ayant, eu *m*, eue *f*.

INDICAT.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Pres.</i>	Ai,	as, a ;	Avons,	Avez,	Ont.
<i>Imp.</i>	Av-ois,	ois, oit ;	Av-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Eus,	eus, eut ;	Eu-mes,	tes,	rent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Au-rai,	ras, ra ;	Au-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Pres.</i>	Aie,	aies, ait ;	Ay-ons,	ez,	Aient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Aur-ois,	ois, oit ;	Aur-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Eusse,	euses, eût ;	Euf-sions,	riez,	sent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Aie,	ait ;	Ay-ons,	ez,	Aient.

Battre (4 ir) *to beat,* battant, battu *m*, battue *f* *.

INDICAT.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Pres.</i>	Bat-s,	s, — ;	tons,	tez,	tent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Batt-ois,	ois, oit ;	ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Batt-is,	is, it ;	imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Batt-rai,	ras, ra ;	rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Pres.</i>	Batt-e,	es, e ;	ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Batt-rois,	rois, roit ;	rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Batt-isse,	isses,ût ;	issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Bat-s,	te, ;	Batt-ons,	ez,	ent.

* This Verb is variously written by different authors ; *Danet*, *Richelet* use a *t* only as *batre* ; *Dupuy*, *Boudouin*, wrote it indifferently, but the present custom authorises this way.

Bénir (2 ir.) *to bless*, bénissant, bénit *m, e f.* This verb is irregular only in the participle of the infinitive, when said of church ceremonies, see the Grammar, p. 107; in other cases it is conjugated like punir, a regular verb.

Boire (4 ir.) *to drink*, buvant, bu *m*, bue *f.*

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Boi-s,	s, t;	Buv-ons,	ez,	Boivent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Buv-ois,	ois, oit;	Buv-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Bu-s,	s, t;	Bu-mes,	tes,	rent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Boi-rai,	ras, ra;	Boi-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Boi-ve,	ves, ve;	Buvi-ons,	ez,	Boivent,
<i>Imp.</i>	Boi-rois,	rois, roit;	Boi-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	B-usse,	usses,ût;	B-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	— Boi-s, ve; Buv-ons, ez, Boivent.				
Bouillir (2 ir) <i>to boil</i> , bouillant, bouilli <i>m, e f.</i>					

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Bou-s,	s, t;	illons,	illez,	illent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Bouill-ois,	ois, oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Bouill-is,	is, it;	imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut*.</i>	Bouilli-rai,	ras, ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Bouill-e,	es, e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Bouilli-rois,	rois, roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Bouill-isse,	isses,ût;	issions,	issiez,issent.	
<i>Imperat.</i>	— Bou-s, ille; Bouill-ons, ez, ent.				

* Ancient authors wrote the Future *bouilleraï*, &c. and the Imperf. of the Subj. *bouillerois*, &c. but I think the modern orthography preferable. The Academy has not decided on either word.

Cei-ndre (4 ir) *To gird, gnant, nt m, nte f.*

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Cein-s, s, t;	<i>Ceign-ons, ez, ent.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> Ceign-ois, ois, oit;	<i>Ceign-ions, iez, oient.</i>
<i>Pret.</i> Ceign-is, is, it;	<i>Ceign-imes, itez, irent.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Ceind-rai, ras, ra;	<i>Ceind rons, rez, ront.</i>

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Ceign-e, es, e;	<i>Ceign-ions, iez, ent.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> Ceind-rois, rois, roit;	<i>Ceind rions, riez, roient.</i>
<i>Pret.</i> Ceign-isse, isses, it;	<i>Ceign-issions, issiez, issent.</i>
<i>Imperat.</i> —Cei-ns, gne;	<i>Ceign-ions, iez, ent.</i>

Circon-cire, (4 ir) *To circumcise, cisant, cis m, cise f.*

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Circonci-s, s, t;	<i>sons, sez, sent.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> Circoncif-ois, ois, oit;	<i>ions, iez, oient.</i>
<i>Pret.</i> Circonc-is, is, it;	<i>imes, itez, irent.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Circonci-rai, ras, ra;	<i>rons, rez, ront.</i>

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Circoncif-e, es, e;	<i>ions, iez, ent.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> Circonci-rois, rois, roit;	<i>rions, riez, roient.</i>
<i>Pret.</i> Circonc-isse, isses, it;	<i>issions, issiez, issent.</i>
<i>Imperat.</i> —Circonc-is, ise;	<i>Circoncif-ons, ez, ent.</i>

Clore *, (4 ir) *To close, closant, clos m, e f.*

Commettre, (4 ir) *To commit, see—Mettre.*

Comprendre (4 ir) *To comprehend, see—Prendre.*

* This verb is very irregular; the academy has not allowed it any other simple tenses but the three persons sing. of the *Pres.* *je clos, tu clos, il clot*; and of the *Fut.* *je clorrai tu clorras, il clorra.*

'Concl-ure, (4 ir) *To conclude*, uant, u m, ue f.

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Conclu-s,	s, t ;	ons, ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Conclu-ois,	ois, oit ;	ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Concl-us,	us, ut ;	umes, utes, urent.
<i>Fut.</i> Conclu-rai,	ras, ra ;	rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Conclu-e,	es, e ;	ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Conclu-rois,	rois, roit ;	rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Concl-usse,	usses, ût ;	ussions, ussiez, ussent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Conclu-s,	e ;	Conclu-ons, ez, ent.

Concourir, (2 ir) *To concur*, see—Courir.

'Condui-re, (4 ir) *To conduct*, fant, t m, te f.

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Condui-s,	s, t ;	sons, fez, sent.
<i>Imp.</i> Conduif-ois,	ois, oit ;	ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Conduif-is,	is, it ;	imes, ites, irent.
<i>Fut.</i> Condui-rai,	ras, ra ;	rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Condui-fe,	ses, fe ;	fions, fiez, sent.
<i>Imp.</i> Condui-rois,	rois, roit ;	rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Conduif-isse,	isses, ît ;	issions, issiez, issent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Condui-s,	fe ;	Condui-sons, sez, sent.

'Confire *, (4 ir) *To preserve*, see—Circoncire.

'Conjoindre, (4 ir) *To join together*, see—Joindre.

* This verb and its only Derivative *déconfire*, are conjugated, through all their tenses, like *circoncire*, except the participle *preterite*, which makes *confit*, whereas *circoncire* makes *circoncis*.

Conn-oître, (4 ir) *To know*, oissant, u m, ue f.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Connoi-s, s, t ;	ssons, ssiez, ssent.
<i>Imp.</i> Connoiss-ois, ois, oit ;	ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Conn-us, us, ut ;	umes, utez, urent.
<i>Fut.</i> Connoit-rai, ras, ra ;	rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Connoiss-e, es, e ;	ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Connoit-rois, rois, roit ;	rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Conn-usse, usses,ût ;	ussions, ussiez, ussent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Conn ois, oisse ;	Connoiss-sons, sez, sent.
Conquérir *, (2 ir) <i>To conquer</i> ,	see—Acquérir.
Construire, (4 ir) <i>To construe</i> ,	see—Conduire.
Convain-cre, (4 ir) <i>To convince</i> ,	quant, cu m, cue f.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Convain-cs, cs, r ;	quons, quez, quent.
<i>Imp.</i> Convainqu-ois, ois, oit ;	ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Convainqu is, is, it ;	imes, ites, irent.
<i>Fut.</i> Convainc-rai, ras, ra ;	rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Convainqu-s, es, e ;	ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Convainc-rois, rois, roit ;	rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Convainqu-isse, isses, it ;	issions, issiez, issent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Convain-cs, que ;	Conquainqu-ons, ez, ent.
Convenir, (2 ir) <i>To agree</i> ,	see—Venir.
Corrompre, (4 ir) <i>To corrupt</i> ,	see—Rompre.

* This verb is used only in the infinitive mood, the preterites of the Indicative and Subjunctive moods ; and forms all its compound tenses, with either the auxiliary verb *avoir* or *être*.

Cou-dre, (4 ir) *To sow, fant, fu m, fue f.*

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Cou-ds, ds, d ;	Cou-sons, sez, sent.
<i>Imp.</i> Couf-ois, ois, oit ;	Couf-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Couf-us, us, ut * ;	Couf-umes, utes, urent.
<i>Fut.</i> Coud-rai, ras, ra ;	Coud-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Couf-e, es, e ;	Couf-ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Coud-rois, rois, roit ;	Coud-rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Couf-usse, usses,ût ;	Couf-ussions,ussiez,ussent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Cou-s, se ;	Couf-ons, ez, ent.

Cou-rir, (2 ir) *To run, rant, ru m, rue f.*

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Pret.</i> Cour-s, s, t ;	Cour-ons, ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Cour-ois, ois, oit ;	Cour-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Cour-us, us, ut ;	Cour-umes, utes, urent.
<i>Fut.</i> Cour-rai, ras, ra ;	Cour-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Pret.</i> Cour-e, es, e ;	Cour-ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Cour-rois, rois, roit ;	Cour-rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Cour-usse, usses,ût ;	Cour-ussions,ussiez,ussent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Cour-s, e ;	Cour-ons, ez, ent.

Crai ndre, (4 ir) *To fear, gnant, nt m, nte f.*

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Crai-n-s, s, t ;	Craign-ons, ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Craign-ois, ois, oit ;	Craign-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Craign-is, is, it ;	Craign-imes, ites, irent.
<i>Fut.</i> Craind-rai, ras, ra ;	Craind-rons, rez, ront.

* Ancient authors used to write *je coufis, tu coufis, &c.* and in the Preterite Subjunct. *je coufisse, tu coufisses, &c.* but modern writers have adopted *coufus* for the Indicat. and *coufusse* for the Subj.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Pres. Craign-e, es, e; Craign-ions, iez, ent.

Imp. Craind-rois, rois, roit; Craind-ions, riez, roient.

Pret. Craign-isse, isses, it; Craignif-sions, siez, sent.

Imperat. — Crai-ns, gne; Craign-ions, iez, ent.

Cr-oire, (4 ir) *To believe*, oyant, u m, ue f.

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Pres. Cr-ois *, ois, oit; oyons, oyez, oient.

Imp. Croy-ois, ois, oit; ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Cr-us, us, ut; umes, utes, urent.

Fut. Croi-rai, ras, ra; rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Pres. Cr-oie, oies, oie; oyions, oyiez, oient.

Imp. Croi-rois, rois, roit; rions, riez, roient.

Pret. Cr-uffe, uffes, ût; uffions, uffiez, uffent.

Imperat. — Cr-ois, oie; Cro-yons, yez, ient.

Croître, (4 ir) *To grow*, see—Connoître.

Cueill-ir, (2 ir) *To gather*, ant, i m, ie, f.

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Pres. Cueill-e, es, e; ons, ez, ent.

Imp. Cueill-ois, ois, oit; ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Cueill-is, ois, it; imes, ites, irent.

Fut. Cueille-rai, ras, ra; rons, rez, ront.

• The manner of pronouncing this word is by some articulated as if it was spelt *crai*, but this is considered by the learned as an effeminate way; we should therefore say *je crois*, as *je vois*.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Cueill-e,	es,	e ;	ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Cueille-rois,	rois	roit ;	rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Cueill-isse,	isses,	ît ;	issions,	issiez,	issent.

Imperat.—Cueill-e, e ; Cueill-ons, ez, ent.

Cuire,	(4 ir)	<i>To cook,</i>	see—Conduire.
Découvrir,	(2 ir)	<i>To discover,</i>	see—Offrir.
Décrire,	(4 ir)	<i>To describe,</i>	see—Ecrire.
Défaire,	(4 ir)	<i>To undo,</i>	see—Faire.
Déplaire,	(4 ir)	<i>To displease,</i>	see—Plaire.
Détruire,	(4 ir)	<i>To destroy,</i>	see—Conduire.
Devenir,	(2 ir)	<i>To become,</i>	see—Venir.
Dire *,	(4 ir)	<i>To say,</i>	disant, dit <i>m</i> , dite <i>f</i>

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Di-s,	s,	t ;	Di-sons,	tes,	sont.
<i>Imp.</i> Dis-ois,	ois,	oit ;	Dis-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Di-s,	s,	t ;	Di-mes,	tes,	rent.
<i>Fut.</i> Di-rai,	ras,	ra ;	Di-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Dis-e,	es,	e ;	Dis-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Di-rois,	rois,	roit ;	Di-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i> D-isse,	isses,	ît ;	D-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —	Di-s,	se ;	Di-sons,	tes,	sont.
Disconvenir,	(2 ir)	<i>To disagree,</i>	see—Venir.		
Discourir,	(2 ir)	<i>To discourse,</i>	see—Courir.		
Disjoindre,	(4 ir)	<i>To disjoint,</i>	see—Joindre.		
Disparaître,	(4 ir)	<i>To disappear,</i>	see—Paroître.		

* The derivatives of this verb *contredire*, *médire*, &c. except *redire*, make *disez*, in the second person plural of the *Pres.* and *Imperat.* but *redire* is conjugated throughout like its Primitive.

Dormir, (2 ir) *To sleep*, dormant, dormi.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Dor-s,	s, t;	Dor-mons,	mez,	ment.
<i>Imp.</i>	Dorm-ois,	ois, oit;	Dorm-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Dorm-is,	is, it;	Dorm-imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Dorm-irai,	iras, ira;	Dorm-irons,	irez,	iront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Dorm-e,	es, e;	Dorm-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Dorm-irois,	irois, iroit;	Dorm-irions,	iriez,	iroient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Dorm-isse,	isses, it;	Dorm-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Dor-s, me;		Dorm-ons, ez, ent.		

Eclore *, (4 ir) *To hatch*, see—Clöre.

Ecrire, (4 ir) *To write*, écrivaint, écrit *m, e f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Ecri-s,	s, t;	Ecri-vons,	vez,	vent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ecriv-ois,	ois, oit;	Ecriv-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Ecriv-is,	is, it;	Ecriv-imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Ecri-rai,	ras, ra;	Ecri-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Ecriv-e,	es, e;	Ecriv-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ecri-rois,	rois, roit;	Ecri-rions,	rez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Ecriv-isse,	isses, it;	Ecriv-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Ecr-is, ive;		Ecriv-ons, ez, ent.		

Elire, (4 ir) *To elect*, see—Lire.

Endormir, (2 ir) *To fall asleep*, see—Dormir.

Entremettre, (4 ir) *To intermeddle*, see—Mettre.

Entreprendre, (4 ir) *To undertake*, see—Prendre.

* This verb is seldom used but in the same persons and tenses, as its primitive *clöre* is, it has however all its compound tenses formed with either *avoir* or *être*, Exam. *J'ai éclos, il est éclos, &c.*

Envoyer, (1 ir) *To send*, envoyant, envoyé *m*, *e f*.

This verb and its derivative Renvoyer, to send back, are regular through their conjugation, except in the future of the Indicative and the imperfect of the Subj. which are thus.

FUTURE INDIC.

IMPERFECT SUBJ.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
J'enverrai,	Nous enverrons.	enverrois,	enverrions.
Tu enverras,	Vous enverrez.	enverrois,	enverriez.
Il enverra,	Ils enverront.	enverroit,	enverroient.
Etre, (4 ir)	To be, étant, été.		

INDICAT.

Singular.	Plural.
Pres. Suis, es, est ;	Sommes, êtes, sont.
Imp. Et-ois, ois, oit ;	Et-ions, iez, oient.
Pret. Fus, fus, fut ;	Fu-mes, tes, rent.
Fut. Se-rai, ras, ra ;	Se-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.	Plural.
Pres. Sois, fois, soit ;	Soyons, foyez, soient.
Imp. Ser-ois, ois, oit ;	Ser-ions, iez, oient.
Pret. Fusse, fusses, fût ;	Fuss-ions, iez, ent.
Imperat. — Sois, soit ;	Soyons, foyez, soient.

Faire, (4 ir) *To do or make*, faisant *, fait *m*, faite *f*.

INDICAT.

Singular.	Plural.
Pres. F-ais, ais, ait ;	F-aisons, aites, ont.
Imp. Fef-ois, ois, oit ;	Fef-ions, iez, oient.
Pret. F-is, is, it ;	Fi-mes, ites, rent.
Fut. Fe-rai, ras, ra ;	Fe-rons, rez, ront.

* This participle, the first person plural *faisons* and the following tenses *faisois*, *serois*, and *serai*, used to be spelt *faisant*, *faisons*, *faisois*, *fairois* and *fairai*, &c. but this orthography is obsolete.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Fais-e es e; Fais-ions, iez, ent.

Imp. Fe-rois, rois, roit; Fe-rions, riez, roient.

Pret. F-issè, isses, it; F-issions, issiez, issent.

Imperat. — Fais, fasse; Fesons, faites, fassent.

Falloir, (3 ir.) *To be needful*, — Fallu*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. Il faut.

Il faille.

Imp. Il falloit.

Il faudroit.

Pret. Il fallut.

Il fallût.

Fut. Il faudra.

— —

Feindre, (4 ir) *To feign*, fee—Ceindre.

Fuir, (2 ir) *To run away*, fuyant, fui m, e f.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Fu-is, is, it; Fu-yons, yez, ient.

Imp. Fuy-ois, ois, oit; Fuy-ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Fu-is, is, it; Fui-mes, tes, rent.

Fut. Fui-rai, ras, ra; Fui-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Fuy-e, es, e; Fuy-ions, iez, Fuient.

Imp. Fui-rois, rois, roit; Fui-rions, riez, roient.

Pret. Fu-isse, isses, it; Fuis-sions, siez, sent.

Imperat. — Fu-is, ye; Fuy-ions, iez, Fuient.

The preterites of the Indicative and Subjunctive of this verb are very little used, and instead of je suis and je m'enfuis, we say, when the verb is neuter, je pris la fuite; and if it is active, j'évitai, from the verb éviter to avoid or shun.

* This verb is defective in the Participle present; its Participle preterite is *fallu*; it is also called an Impersonal, there being but the third person of every tense used. It has ne'er an Imperative.

Haïr, (2 ir) *To hate*, haïssant, haï *m*, haïe *f*.

INDICAT.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	Haï-s, s, t;	Haïss-ons, ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Haïss-ois, ois, oit;	Haïss-ions, iez, cient.
<i>Pret.</i>	* — — —	— — —
<i>Fut.</i>	Haï-rai, ras, ra;	Haï-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	Haïss-e, es, e;	Haïss-ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Haï-rois, rois, roit;	Haï-rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	* — — —	— — —
<i>Imperat.</i>	— Ha-is, îsse;	Ha-ïssons, îssiez, îssent.
Instruire,	(4 ir) <i>To instruct</i> , see—Conduire.	
Interrompre,	(4 ir) <i>To interrupt</i> , see—Rompre.	
Joindre,	(4 ir) <i>To join</i> , see—Ceindre.	
Lire,	(4 ir) <i>To read</i> , lisant, lu <i>m</i> , lue <i>f</i> .	

INDICAT.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	L-is, is, it;	L-isons, isez, isent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Lif-ois, ois, oit;	Lif-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Lu-s, s, t;	Lu-mes, tez, rent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Li-rai, ras, ra;	Li-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	Lif-e, es, e;	Lif-ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Li-rois, rois, oit;	Li-rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	L-usse, usses, ût;	L-ussions, ussiez, ussent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	— Li-s, se;	Lif-ons, ez, ent.

* The preterite in both moods is never used; the three first persons sing. of the Indic. and the second of the Imperat. make one syllable each, and therefore are written with a common i.

Maintenir, (2 ir) *To maintain*, see—Tenir.
 Maudire*, (4 ir) *To curse*, see—Médire.
 Méconnoître, (4 ir) *To mistake*, see—Connoître.
 Mé-dire, (4 ir) *To slander*, disant, dit *m*, dite *f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Méd-is,	is it;	Méd-isons,	isez,	isent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Médif-ois,	ois oit;	Médif-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Méd-is,	is, it;	Méd-imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Médi-rai,	ras, ra;	Médi-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Méd-ise,	ises, ise;	Médi-sions,	siez,	sent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Médi-rois,	rois, roit;	Médi-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Méd-isse,	isses, ît;	Médif-sions,	siez,	sent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	— Méd-is, ise;		Méd-isons,	isez,	isent.

Mentir (2 ir) *To lie*, mentant, menti.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Mén-s,	s, t;	Mén-tons,	tez,	tent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ment-ois,	ois, oit;	Ment-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Ment-is,	is, it;	Ment-imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Menti-rai,	ras, ra;	Menti-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Ment-e,	es, e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Menti-rois,	rois, roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Ment-isse,	isses, ît;	issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	— Mén-s, te;		Ment-ons,	ez,	ent.

* This verb follows the same conjugation as *médire*, with this exception that it doubles its *s* thro' the whole; Examp. *maudissant*, *maudissons*, *maudissez*, *maudissent*, &c. like those of *Punir*.

Mettre, (4 ir) *To put*, mettant, mis *m*, mise *f*.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Pres.</i> Met-s,	s, —;	Met-tons,	tez,	tent.
<i>Imp.</i> Mett-ois,	ois, oit;	Met-tions,	tiez,	toient.
<i>Pret.</i> Mi-s,	s, t;	Mi-mes,	tes,	rent.
<i>Fut.</i> Mett-rai,	ras, ra;	Mett-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Pres.</i> Mett-e,	es, e;	Mett-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Mett-rois,	rois, roit;	Mett-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i> M-isse,	isses,ût;	M-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Met-s,	te;	Mett-ons,	ez,	ent.

Mourir, (2 ir) *To die*, mourant, mort *m*, e *f*.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Pres.</i> Meur-s,	s, t;	Mour-ons,	ez,	Meurent.
<i>Imp.</i> Mour-ois,	ois, oit;	Mour-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Mour-us,	us, ut;	Mour-umes,	utes,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i> Mour-rai,	ras, ra;	Mour-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural. *

<i>Pres.</i> Meur e,	es, e;	Mour-ions,	ez,	Meurent.
<i>Imp.</i> Mour-rois,	rois, roit;	Mour-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Mour-usse,	usse,ût;	Mour-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.

Imperat.—Meur-s, e; Mour-ons, ez, Meurent.

Naitre *, (4 ir) *To be born*, naissant, né *m*, née *f*.

* The only derivative this verb has is *renaitre*; but, as it has no participle preterite, and consequently can form no compound-tenses, in its stead we make use of *régénéré*, with the verb *Etre*.

Naitre, (4 ir) *To be born*, naissant, né *m*, née *f*.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Pres.</i> Nai-s, s, t;	Naiss-ons, ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Naiss-ois, ois, oit;	Naiss-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Naqu-is, is, it;	Naqu-imes, ites, irent.
<i>Fut.</i> Nait-rai, ras, ra;	Nait-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Pres.</i> Naiss-e, es, e;	Naiss-ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Nait rois, rois, roit;	Nait-rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Naqu-issè, isses, it;	Naqu-issions, issiez, issent.
<i>Imperat.</i> Nai-s, sse;	Naiss-ons, ez, ent.

Nuire *, (4 ir) *To hurt*, see—Conduire.

Obmettre, (4 ir) *To omit*, see—Mettre. *This verb is spelt with a b by several respectable authors; but it is usually left out in modern orthography.*

Obtenir, (4 ir) *To obtain*, see—Tenir.

Offrir, (2 ir) *To offer*, offrant, offert *m*, *e f*.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Pres.</i> Off-re, res, re;	Off-rons, rez, rent.
<i>Imp.</i> Off-rois, rois, roit;	Off-rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Off-ris, ris, rit;	Off-rimes, rites, rirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Offri-rai, ras, ra;	Offri-rons, rez, ront.

* Altho' this verb is conjugated thro' all its tenses like *conduire*, yet it takes no *t* at the end of the particle preterite, and makes only *nui*. Its compound tenses are formed with the verb *Avoir*.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Pres. Off-re, res, re; Off-rions, riez, rent.

Imp. Offri-rois, rois, roit; Offri-rions, riez, roient.

Pret. Off-risse, risses, rit; Off-rissions, rissiez, rissent.

Imperat. — Off-re, re; Off-rons, rez, rent.

Omettre, (4 ir) *To omit*, see — Mettre.

Ouvrir, (2 ir) *To open*, see — Offrir.

Paroître, (4 ir) *To appear*, see — Connoître.

Plaire, (4 ir) *To please*, plaissant, plu.

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Pres. Plais, plais, plait; Plai-sons, sez, sent.

Imp. Plais-ois, ois, oit; Plai-sions, siez, soient.

Pret. Pl-us, us, ut; Pl-umes, utes, urent.

Fut. Plai-rai, ras; ra; Plai-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Pres. Plaif-e, es, e; Plaif-ions, iez, ent.

Imp. Plai-rois, rois, roit; Plai-rions, riez, roient.

Pret. Pl-usse, usses,ût; Pl-ussions, ussiez, ussent.

Imperat. — Plai s, se; Plaif-ions, ez, ent.

Pouvoir, (3 ir) *To be able*, Pouvant, pu.

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Pres. P-uis *, cus, eut; P-ouvons, ouvez, euvent,

Imp. Pouv-ois, ois, oit; Pouv-ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Pu-s, s, t; Pu-mes, tes, rent.

Fut. Pour-rai, ras, ra; Pour-rons, rez, ront.

* We say both *je peux*, and *je puis*; to point out their precise difference, it would be necessary to enter into too minute a detail for this extract; it must be observed that this verb has no Imperative mood.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

ent.	<i>Pres.</i> Puiss-e,	es, e;	Puiss-ions,	iez, ent.
oient.	<i>Imp.</i> Pour-rois,	rois, roit;	Pour-rions,	riez, roient.
issent.	<i>Pret.</i> Puss-e,	es, Pût;	Puss-ions,	iez, ent.
nt.	Poursuivre,	(4 ir) <i>To pursue,</i>	see—Suivre.	
	Pourvoir,	(3 ir) <i>To provide,</i>	see—Voir.	
	Prendre,	(4 ir) <i>To take,</i>	prenant, pris <i>m, e f.</i>	

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

ent.	<i>Pres.</i> Pren-ds,	ds, d;	Pren-ons,	ez, nent.
oient.	<i>Imp.</i> Pren-ois,	ois, oit;	Pren-ions,	iez, oient.
issent.	<i>Pret.</i> Pr-is,	is, it;	Pr-imes,	ites, irent.
ont.	<i>Fut.</i> Prend-rai,	ras, ra;	Prend-rons,	rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

ent.	<i>Pres.</i> Pren-ne,	nes, ne;	Pren-ions,	iez, nent.
oient.	<i>Imp.</i> Prend-rois,	rois, roit;	Prend-rions,	riez, roient.
issent.	<i>Pret.</i> Pr-isse,	isses, it;	Pr-issions,	issiez, issent.
nt.	<i>Imperat.</i> —	Pren-s, ne;	Pren-ons,	ez, nent.
	Prévenir,	(2 ir) <i>To prevent,</i>	see—Venir.	
	Prévaloir *,	(3 ir) <i>To prevail,</i>	see—Valoir.	
	Prévoir	(3 ir) <i>To foresee,</i>	see—Voir.	
	Produire,	(4 ir) <i>To produce,</i>	see—Conduire.	
	Promettre,	(4 ir) <i>To promise,</i>	see—Mettre.	
vent,	Reconnoître,	(4 ir) <i>To know again,</i>	see—Connoître.	
ent.	Réduire,	(4 ir) <i>To reduce,</i>	see—Conduire.	
nt.	Reprendre,	(4 ir) <i>To take again,</i>	see—Pendre.	
nt.				

* This however deviates from its primitive, both in the Imperative-mood, and the present of the Subjunctive, for it makes a detail *prévale*, and not *prevaille*. Its compound tenses are formed with the auxiliary *Avoir*.

Rés-oudre, (4 ir) *To resolve*, olvant, olu *m*, olue *f*.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Rés-ous, ous, out; olvons, olvez, olvent.

Imp. Résolv-ois, ois, oit; ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Résol-us, us, ut; umes, utes, urent.

Fut. Résoud-rai, ras, ra; rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Résolv-e, es, e; ions, iez, ent.

Imp. Résoud-rois, rois, roit; rions, riez, roient.

Pret. Résol-ussie, ussies,ût; ussions, ussiez, ussent.

Imperat. — Rés-ous, olve; Résolv-ons, ez, ent.

Rire, (4 ir) *To laugh*, Riant, ri.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Ri-s, s, t; Ri-ons, ez, ent.

Imp. Ri-ois, ois, oit; Ri-ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Ri-s, s, t; Ri-mes, tes, rent.

Fut. Ri-rai, ras, ra; Ri-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Ri-e, es, e; Ri-ions, iez, ent.

Imp. Ri-rois, rois, roit; Ri-rions, riez, roient.

Pret. R-issie, issies,ût; R-issions, issiez, issent,

Imperat. — Ri-s, e; Ri-ons, ez, ent.

Rom pre, (4 ir) *To break*, pant, pu *m*, e *f**.

Satisfaire, (4 ir) *To satisfy*, fee—Faire.

* This verb is conjugated, through all its tenses, with the same terminations, as the regular verb *Vendre*, p. vi. except in the third person sing. numb. of the present tense indicative-mood, which makes *rompt*.

Savoir, (3 ir) *To know*, sachant, su *m, e f.*

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. S-ais, ais, ait ; S-avons, avez, avent.

Imp. Sav-ois, ois, oit ; Sav-ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Su-s, s, t ; Su-mes, tes, rent.

Fut. Sau-rai, ras, ra ; Sau-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Sach-e, es, e ; Sach-ions, iez, ent.

Imp. Sau-rois, rois, roit ; Sau-rions, riez, roient.

Pret. Su-ffe, uffes,ût ; S-ussions, ussiez, ussent.

Imperat.—Sa-che, che ; Sach-ons, ez, ent.

S'enaller, (1 ir) *To go away*, see—Aller.

Sentir, (2 ir) *To smell*, see—Mentir.

Servir, (2 ir) *To serve*, servant, servi *m, e f.*

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Ser-s, s, t ; Ser-vons, vez, vent.

Imp. Serv-ois, ois, oit ; Serv-ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Serv-is, is, it ; Serv-imes, ites, irent.

Fut. Servi-rai, ras, ra ; Servi-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Ser-ve, ves, ve ; Serv-ions, viez, vent.

Imp. Servi-rois, rois, roit ; Servi-rions, riez, roient.

Pret. Serv-isse, isses, it ; Serv-issions, issiez, issent.

Imperat.—Ser-s, ye ; Ser-vons, ez, ent.

Sortir, (2 ir) *To go out*, see—Mentir.

Soudre, (4 ir) *To solve*, Defective verb *.

* Of this verb this word is only used as a dogmatical term : *Pascal*, and other celebrated authors, have introduced its derivative *résoudre* in its stead, which is in use thro' all its tenses ; see page xxviii.

Souff-rir, (2 ir.) *To suffer*, rant, ert *m*, erte *f*.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Souff-re, res, re ; Souff-rons, rez, rent.
Imp. Souff-rois, rois, roit ; Souff-rions, riez, roient.
Pret. Souff-ris, ris, rit ; Souff-rimes, rites, rirent.
Fut. Souffri-rai, ras, ra ; Souffri-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Souff-re, res, re ; Souff-rions, riez, rent.
Imp. Souffri-rois, rois, roit ; Souffri-rions, riez, roient.
Pret. Souff-isse, isses, ît ; Souffr-issions, issiez, issent.
Imperat.—Souff-res, re ; Souff-rons, rez, rent.

Sourire, (ir) *To smile*, see—Rire.

Suffire, (4 ir) *To suffice*,, see—Circoncire.

Sui-vre, (4 ir) *To follow*, vant, vi *m*, e *f*.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Sui-s*, s, t ; Sui-vons, vez, vent.
Imp. Suiv-ois, ois, oit ; Suiv-ions, iez, oient.
Pret. Suiv-is, is, it ; Suiv-imes, itez, irent.
Fut. Suiv-rai, ras, ra ; Suiv-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Suiv-e, es, e ; Suiv-ions, iez, ent.
Imp. Suiv-rois, rois, roit ; Suiv-rions, riez, roient.
Pret. Suiv-isse, isses, ît ; Suiv-issions, issiez, issent.
Imperat.—Sui-s, ve ; Suiv-ons, ez, ent.

* The difference we make betwixt the pronunciation of the first person, and that of the verb *Etre*, which is spelt in the same manner, viz. *je suis* (I am) is in pronouncing *je suis* (I follow) short, and that from the verb *Etre* long.

Tenir, (2 ir) *To hold*, Tenant, tenu *m, e f.*

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. T-iens, iens, ient ; T-enons, enez, iennent.

Imp. Ten-ois, ois, oit ; Ten-ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Tin-s, s, t ; Tin-mes, tes, rent.

Fut. Tiend-rai, ras, ra ; Tiend-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Tien-ne, nes, ne ; Ten-ions, iez, Tiennent.

Imp. Tiend-rois, rois, roit ; Tiend-rions, riez, roient.

Pret. Tin-ſſe, ſſes, t ; Tin-ſſions, ſſiez, ſſient.

Imperat. — Tien-s, ne ; Ten-ons, ez, Tiennent.

Traduire, (4 ir) *To translate*, ſee—Conduire.

Transcrire, (4 ir) *To transcribe*, ſee—Ecrire.

Treſſaill-ir (2 ir) *To ſtart up*, ant, i.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Treſſaill-e, es, e ; ons, ez, ent.

Imp. Treſſaill-ois, ois, oit ; ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Treſſaill-is, is, it ; imes, ites, irent.

Fut. Treſſailli-rai, ras, ra ; rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Treſſaill-e, es, e ; ions, iez, ent.

Imp. Treſſailli-rois, rois, roit ; rions, riez, roient.

Pret. Treſſailli-ſſe, ſſes, t ; ſſions, ſſiez, ſſient.

Imperat. — Treſſaill-es, e ; ions, iez, ent.

Vaincre *, (4 ir) *To vanquiſh*, ſee—Convaincre.

* The ſingular number of this verb is ſeldom uſed, and it is more elegant to make uſe, in its ſtead, of *triompher, être victorieux, remporter la victoire, gagner, la bataille*, or ſome expreſſion implying the ſame meaning.

Valoir, (3 ir) *To be worth*, Valant *, valu.

INDICAT.

	Singular.		Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	V-aus, aus, aut ;	Val-ons, ez, ent.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Val-ois, ois, oit ;	Val-ions, iez, oient.	
<i>Pret.</i>	Val-us, us, ut ;	Val-umes, utes, urent.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Vaud-rai, ras, ra ;	Vaud-rons, rez, ront.	

SUBJUNCT.

	Singular.		Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	V-aille, ailles, aille ;	V-alions, aliez, aillent.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Vaud-rois, rois, roit ;	Vaud-rions, riez, roient.	
<i>Pret.</i>	Val-usse, usses,ût ;	Val-umes, utes, urent.	
<i>Imperat.</i>	— V-aus, aille ;	V-alons, alez, aillent.	

Venir, (2 ir) *To come*, venant, venu *m, e f.*

INDICAT.

	Singular.		Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	V-iens, iens, ient ;	V-enons, enez, iennent.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Ven-ois, ois, oit ;	Ven-ions, iez, oient.	
<i>Pret.</i>	Vin-s, s, t ;	Vin-mes, tes, rent.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Viend-rai, ras, ra ;	Viend-rons, rez, ront.	

SUBJUNCT.

	Singular.		Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	Vien-ne, nes, ne ;	Ven-ions, iez, Viennent.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Viend-rois, rois, roit ;	Viend-rions, riez, roient.	
<i>Pret.</i>	Vin-ssé, ssés, t ;	Vin-ssions, ssiez, ssent.	
<i>Imperat.</i>	— Vien-s, ne ;	Ven-ons, ez, Viennent.	

Vêtir, (2 ir) *To cloath*, Vêtant, vêtu *m, e f.*

* We also make use of *vaillant* conjointly with the verb *Avoir*, instead of *valant*, when we are speaking of the particular sum of money a person is worth ; Exam. *Illa mille livres vaillant*, &c. but on all other accounts *valant* is used.

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Vêt-s	s, — ;	Vêt-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Vêt-ois,	ois, oit ;	Vêt-ions,	iez,	oient :
<i>Pret.</i>	Vêt-is,	is, it ;	Vêt-imes,	itès,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Vêti-rai,	ras, ra ;	Vêti-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Vêt-e,	es, e ;	Vêt-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Vêti-rois,	rois, oit ;	Vêti-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Vêt-isse,	isses,ût ;	Vêt-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—	Vêt-s, e ;	Vêt-ons,	ez,	ent.

Vivre, (4 ir) *To live*, vivant, vécu.

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Vi-s,	s, t ;	Viv-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Viv-ois,	ois, oit ;	Viv-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pre*.</i>	Vêc-us,	us, ut ;	Vêc-umes,	utes,	urent.
<i>Pre*.</i>	Vêqu-is,	is, it ;	Vêqu-imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Viv-rai,	ras, ra ;	Viv-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Viv e,	es, e ;	Viv-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Viv-rois,	rois, roit ;	Viv-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pre*.</i>	Vêc-usse,	usses,ût ;	Vêc-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Pre*.</i>	Vêqu-isse,	isses,ût ;	Vêquif-sions,	fiez,	sent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—	Vi s, ve ;	Viv-ons,	ez,	ent.

* These two Preterites have each their advocates, the members of the French Academy are for *vêcus* and *vêcusse*, and so is *Reflaut* ; but *Richelet*, *Vaugelas*, *Danet*, and other learned authors make use of the latter.

Voir (3 ir) *To see,*Voyant, *vu m, e f.*

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	V-ois, ois,	oit ;	V-oyons, oyez,	oient.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Voy-ois, ois,	oit ;	Voy-ions, iez,	oient.	
<i>Pret.</i>	V-is, is	it ;	V-imes, ites,	irent.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Ver-rai, ras,	ra ;	Ver-rons, rez,	ront.	

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Voi-e, es, e ;		V-oyons, oyez,	oient.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Ver-rois, rois, roit ;		Ver-rions, riez,	roient.	
<i>Pret.</i>	V-isse, isses, it :		V-issions, issiez,	issent.	
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Voi-s, e ;		V-oyons, oyez,	oient.	

Vouloir, (3 ir) *To be willing,* Voulant, voulu.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Veu-x, s, t ;		Voul-ons, ez,	Veulent.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Voul-ois, ois, oit ;		Voul-ions, iez,	oient.	
<i>Pret.</i>	Voul-us, us, ut ;		Voul-umes, utes,	urent.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Voud-rai, ras, ra ;		Voud-rons, rez,	ront.	

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Veuill-e, es, e ;		Vouli-ons, ez,	Veuillent.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Voud-rois, rois, roit ;		Voud-rions, riez,	roient.	
<i>Pret.</i>	Voul-usse, usses,ût ;		Voul-ussions, ussiez, ussent.		

This verb has no Imperative-Mood, because it is no less ridiculous to bid one-self to be willing, than absurd to command others to be so.

THE PARTICLES. XXXV

PARTICLES make the sense of a sentence more intelligible, by either expressing the circumstances of other words, or connecting them together; and these differ from the other parts of speech in this, that their termination is not susceptible of any change, but are to be used as they are found in the Dictionary.

They are generally distinguished by the following names of

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| I. ADVERBIAL, | III. CONJUNCTIVE, |
| II. PREPOSITIVE, | IV. INTERJECTIVE. |

I. ADVERBIAL particles are so called, because they are generally joined to verbs to explain their signification with more clearness, or denote some particular circumstances in regard either to the person that speaks, or the thing spoken of. Example; Soon, *tôt*; late, *tard*; much, *beaucoup*; little, *peu*; quick, *vîte*, &c.

II. PREPOSITIVE particles are those which always come before substantives or pronouns, from which they derive their name; as, *In* the house, *dans la maison*; *with* me, *avec moi*; *for* him, *pour lui*, &c.

III. CONJUNCTIVE particles serve to connect one sentence with another, one verb with another, or any part of speech with another; they can be put also before verbs, as, *And*, *et*; *or*, *ou*; *but* *mais*; *although*, *quoique*; *if*, *si*, &c.

IV. INTERJECTIVE particles are words inserted into the discourse, to express some sudden motion or passion of the soul; as, *Alas*, *hélas*; *lack-a-day*, *bon Dieu*; &c.

✎ Thus much I have thought necessary to prefix to these Exercises for the use of those who are not acquainted with the Rudiments of our Language.



E X P L A N A T I O N

Of the Abbreviations used in this work.

m.	}	stands for	}	masculine.
f.				feminine.
c.				common.
sing.				singular.
plur.				plural.
i. e.				id est or viz.
(ir)				irregular.
(1)				1 conjugation:
(2)				2 conjugation.
(3)				3 conjugation.
(4)				4 conjugation.

The four last numerical figures denote the respective *Regular conjugations* the verbs, preceding them, belong to.

* * * The French under the English, thro' this book, is the root of the word, as it would be found in a dictionary, that is, without its grammatical accidents; except such parts of speech as are introduced before the rules relating to their construction, which are included between two perpendicular lines, and have their right signification expressed under them.



GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of ARTICLES.

- I. **F**RENCH Articles must be of the same Gender and Number, as the Substantives they have a reference to*;

E X A M P L E :

The father, the mother, and the children.

Le pere la mere, et les enfans.

P R A X I S.

To walk	in the yard.	To read a book.	To see the
<i>Se promener</i>	<i>dans cour f.</i>	<i>lire livre m.</i>	<i>voir</i>
fun.	To light the candles.	To instruct a boy.	
<i>soleil m.</i>	<i>allumer</i>	<i>chandelle f.</i>	<i>instruire garçon m.</i>
To sing a song.	To speak to the maid.	To go	
<i>chanter chanson f.</i>	<i>parler</i>	<i>servante f.</i>	<i>aller</i>
to the park.	To observe the rules of the school, and		
<i>parc m.</i>	<i>observer</i>	<i>règle f.</i>	<i>école f.</i>
the eye of the master.	From the house to the church.		
<i>œil m.</i>	<i>maître m.</i>	<i>maison f.</i>	<i>église f.</i>

* Before the word *saint*, the feminine article *la* is sometimes used, as in *la saint Pierre*, St. Peter's day; &c. but it is for abbreviation sake, for the words *fête de* are then understood; see the *Practical Grammar*, p. 151.

2 THE CONSTRUCTION

II. *The Article is to be repeated in French, before all the Substantives of a sentence, although it be omitted in English;*

E X A M P L E:

The master, mistress, and servants.

Le maître, la maîtresse, et les domestiques.

P R A X I S.

Bring a knife and fork; | go and fetch | the bread and
Aportez couteau m. fourchette f. allez chercher pain m.
 butter; take away the spoons and plates. The brewer
beurre m. otez cuiller f. assiette f. brasseur m.
 and baker are gone; the butcher and grocer are at the
boulangier m. partis boucher m. épicier m. à
 door. The king has rewarded the officers and soldiers.
porte f. roi m. récompensé officier m. soldat m.

III. *The Article definite, though not specified in English, must be used in French; first, before all Substantives taken in a general sense *; secondly, before Adjectives taken as Substantives;*

E X A M P L E:

Study makes men learned.

L'étude rend les hommes sçavans.

P R A X I S.

To hate vice. To practice virtue. To learn French
hàïr pratiquer apprendre François m.
 and Italian. Honor is due to kings and magistrates.
Italien bonneur du magistrat m.
 Black and red are more esteemed than yellow and grey.
noir m. rouge c. estimé jaune m. gris m.

* This Rule extends also to the names of arts and sciences, as *logic, philosophy, &c.* virtues, vices, and games, as *wisdom, idleness, picquet, &c.* and several names of countries; see the Rules of Substantives, p. 10, R. VI.

OF ARTICLES.

3

IV. *Before parts of Measure, Weight and Number, the indefinite Article is rendered into French by the definite;*

EXAMPLE:

Wine sells for twenty pence a bottle.
Le vin se vend vingt sous la bouteille.*

P R A X I S.

Two crowns a bushel.	How-much a yard;	four
<i>écu m. boisseau m.</i>	<i>combien</i>	<i>verge f.</i>
guineas an ell.	Seven farthings a pint.	Three pence
<i>guinée f. aune f.</i>	<i>liard m. pinte f.</i>	<i>sou m.</i>
a pound.	A penny a dozen.	Thirty shillings a barrel.
<i>livre f. sou m.</i>	<i>douzaine f.</i>	<i>cbelin m. baril m.</i>
Five pounds a hundred.	Seventy pounds a hoghead.	
<i>livre f. cent m.</i>	<i>muid. m.</i>	

V. *When only a part of a Substance or Species is denoted, that limited sense (answering in English to the word some, either expressed or understood) is signified in French by the partitive Article du m. de la f. and des pl. according to the Gender and Number of the Substantive, and its initial letter;*

EXAMPLE:

Eat some bread and drink water.
Mangez du pain et buvez de l'eau.

P R A X I S.

Send me some fish,	some eggs and mustard,	some
<i>Envoyez moi poisson m.</i>	<i>œuf m. moutarde f.</i>	
pepper and salt.	Some beans and bacon;	Some beef
<i>poivre m. sel m.</i>	<i>fève f. lard m.</i>	<i>beuf m.</i>
and carrots;	some mutton and turneps.	She sells fruit.
<i>carrote f. mouton m.</i>	<i>navet m.</i>	<i>vend fruit m.</i>

* We also frequently use the particle *par* instead of the Definite Article; as, Twenty-pence a bottle, *vingt sous par bouteille*. Two crowns a bushel, *deux écus par boisseau*. Three shillings a week, *trois cbelins par semaine*; &c.

4 THE CONSTRUCTION.

VI. *When a French Substantive is preceded by an Adjective, instead of the Articles du, de la, or des; we use the Particle de or d' for both numbers, and before either gender **;

E X A M P L E:

I saw fine horses in his stables.

Je vis de beaux chevaux dans ses écuries.

P R A X I S.

This is | good bread, excellent wine, but bad cheese.

^{voici} I have spent ^{bon} happy moments ^{excellent} here. Your brother has ^{mauvais} received ^{passé} great ^{heureux} presents, ^{moment m.} tell him then ^{ici.} to buy ^{frère} new books. ^{reçu} ^{grand} ^{dites} ^{d'acheter} ^{nouveau}

VII. *If a Substantive is attended by two Adjectives connected by the particle and, the Article is to be repeated before both Adjectives, when each of them implies a different signification; otherwise the Article is only used before the first;*

E X A M P L E:

1. The young and old soldiers did their duty.
Les jeunes et les vieux soldats firent leur devoir.
2. The pious and holy man whom you know, &c.
Le pieux et saint homme que vous connoissez, &c.

P R A X I S.

The quick and prudent execution of a great and vast project denotes a clever man. The fine and magnificent house which you have | caused to be built | is not solid.

^{prompte f.} ^{sage c.} ^{grand m.} ^{vaste c.}
^{projet m.} ^{désigne} ^{habile c.} ^{belle f.} ^{magnifique c.}
^{que} ^{fait} ^{bâti} ^{solide.}

* This rule relates only to cases where the sense is restrained by alluding to a part of that which is denoted in the phrase; for if the substantive referred to, includes the whole species or substance, the definite article is then to be used: Exam. *Il s'est défait des beaux chevaux qu'il avoit; not de beaux.*

VIII. But there are some cases wherein Articles, though expressed in English, are not to be rendered into French; which may be better learned by practice, than by any particular rule;

E X A M P L E:

Shall it be *a* holiday to-morrow?
Sera-t-il congé demain?

P R A X I S.

The more you play the less you study. Have you *a* good
^{plus} ^{jouez} ^{moins} ^{étudiez} ^{bon}
stomach. Frederick the third is *a* great politician. Are
^{appétit m.} ^{Frédérique} ^{trois} ^{grand} ^{politique m.}
you *a* Scotchman. Have you *a* mind to read at present.
^{écossais m.} ^{envie} ^{de lire}

As this last Rule requires to be illustrated, let it be observed that we generally leave out the Article, tho' expressed in English;—1st. Before ordinal Adjectives annexed to proper names*; Exam. Francis the first, François premier; Henry the fourth, Henri quatre; George the third, George trois; &c. and before the two numeral Adjectives Cent and Mille, followed either by a Substantive or a Pronoun, the Article *a* is suppressed in French, as in these Examples; I have won *a* thousand Guineas, j'ai gagné mille Guinées; I will lend you *a* hundred of them, je vous en prêterai cent; &c. But the Article *the* is not omitted before these too last mentioned numbers; for the Substantive annexed to them generally relates to something else; Exam. I bring you the hundred guineas, which you lent me the other day, je vous apporte les cent Guinées que vous me prêtates l'autre jour; &c.—2^{dly}. Before *a* substantive immediately following a verb that expresses an indivisible sense with it, or denotes an indefinite action, either of the body or the mind; Exam. To have *a* desire, avoir envie;

* When proper names are distinguished by any other Adjective, used as a surname to kings and sovereigns, or as an epithet to cities, towns, &c. the Article is then expressed in French as in English; Exam. Louis le Juste étoit père de Louis le Grand, Lewis the Just was father of Lewis the Great.

6 THE CONSTRUCTION

to run a risk, *courir risque*; to set a value, *faire cas*; to put an end, *mettre fin*; &c.—3dly. *When substantives are employed as adjectives*; Exam. Alexander was more than a king, *Alexandre étoit plus que roi*; your brother is less than a man, *votre frère est moins qu'homme*; &c. as likewise after the verb *être*, if *ce* is not its subject, and when the substantive following it, is not attended by a relative pronoun, or any other appurtenance; Exam. He is a man, *il est homme*; &c.—4thly. *After the particle en*, as in these and like examples; to be in a passion, *être en colère*; to go into the city, *aller en ville*; &c.—5thly. *In beginning the Title, Preface, and Contents of a performance*; and in the middle of sentences where the substantive, following the indefinite article, characterises, in a particular manner, the person or thing spoken of; Exam. A discourse on the duties of man, *discours sur les devoirs de l'homme*; the Preface, *Préface*; the Contents, *Table des matières*; the late Duke of York, a prince of the blood, died on the, &c. *le feu Duc d'York, Prince du sang, mourut le*, &c.—6thly. *Prefixed to the adverbial particles more and less*, as it appears by the foregoing Praxis.—7thly. *When they come after a relative pronoun in sentences of admiration or exclamation*; Exam. What a fine landscape! *Quel beau paysage!* What a crime! *Quel crime!* &c.—8thly. *Before national names, and those of Trades and Professions*; Exam. I am a Frenchman, *je suis François*; he was a printer, *il étoit imprimeur*; are you a protestant, *êtes vous protestant?* &c.—But should these last words be followed by a relative pronoun, the Article is then to be expressed in French as in English; Exam. I am a Frenchman, who &c. *Je suis un François, qui* &c. Lastly, when several substantives, immediately following each other, are governed by the same verb, or imply the same idea, they may be construed into French without an Article; Exam. Towers, trees, spires, were overthrown by this whirlwind; *Tours, arbres, clochers, furent renversés par cet ouragan*; &c. But after all that can be said on this head, there will be something wanting, to be supplied by much reading and good conversation.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE,

On the foregoing Rules for the Construction of Articles.

The ant is the emblem of industry; the lamb and dove
fourmi f. emblème m. industrie f. agneau m. colombe f.
 of meekness and humility. Exercise and temperance
docur f. humilité f. tempérance f.
 strengthen the constitution. Cheerfulness procures the
fortifiant tempérament m. gaieté f. procure
 happiness of the soul. Covetousness promiseth wealth;
bouheur m. ame f. avarice f. promet richesses pl.
 luxury pleasures; and ambition power. Secrecy is
luxe m. plaisirs pl. pouvoir m. secret m.
 the key of prudence, and the sanctuary of wisdom.
clé f. prudence f. sanctuaire m. sagesse f.
 Time is not only the master of experience, books instruct;
tems m. seul maître m. livre m. instruisent
 history is full of old generals conquered by young foldiers.
histoire f. pleine vieux conquis jeune c. soldat m.
 Fame, honours, and dignities are things uncertain.
renommée f. dignité f. chose f. incertaines
 Necessity is the mother of projects.
mère projet m.

Trade enriches, luxury enervates, and arts amuse.
commerce m. enrichit affaiblit art m. amusent
 Iron and steel are more useful than gold and silver.
fer m. acier m. utile c. or m. argent m.
 Coffee is sold for four shillings a pound. Green hurts
café m. se vend chélin m. livre f. vert m. blesse
 the sight less than red. Generosity begets us friends.
vue f. que rouge m. nous fait ami m.
 Cares and infelicities are often the attendants of greatness.
soin malheurs pl. souvent compagnons pl. grandeur f.
 Neither the love of friends, or hatred of enemies; nei-
ni amour haine f. ennemi m.
 ther hope of pleasure, or gain; nor fear of pain, or loss,
espérance f. plaisir m. profit m. ni crainte f. peine f. perte f.
 ought to make us forsake virtue. The more a country
doivent nous faire abandonner vertu f. pays m.
 is inhabited, the more opulent it is (the more it is opulent).
peuple riche il

8 THE CONSTRUCTION

RULES for the Construction of SUBSTANTIVES.

I. *If two Substantives, depending on each other, come together without being divided by either Stop or Particle, their order is to be reversed in French; that is, the second is to be construed first, and the first last, after the following manner;*

E X A M P L E:

The boy's hat; a silver dish.
Le chapeau du garçon; un plat d'argent.

P R A X I S.

The king's accession. The street door. A pair of silk
roi m. avènement m. rue f. porte f. paire f. soie
stockings. A scarlet cloak. A brick house. St. James's
bas m. pl. écarlatte f. manteau m. brique maison f. Jacques
market. Miss N—'s fan and gloves. Your sister's apron.
marché m. éventail m. gant m. sœur tablier m.

II. *But if the first Substantive serves to denote some particular commodity or liquor, the article au m, à la f, aux pl. or à l', before an initial vowel, is to be used in French before it*;*

E X A M P L E:

The butter man is at the door.
L'homme au beurre est à la porte.

P R A X I S.

Mr. A—— lives in the Hay-market. See whether the
demeure foie m. marché m. voyez si
oil bottle is on the window: Do you like milk coffee?
huile f. bouteille f. sur fenêtre f. aimez-vous café m.
Bring the gravy soup, and the rice pudding. Call the
apportez jus m. soupe f. ris m. boudin m.
rabbet man, and the oyster woman. Send for the pye
lapins pl. huîtres pl. envoyez chercher pâtés pl.
woman.

* In very few cases, the Particle à is only used before Substantives of the same kind as these are; for we say, *Un verre à vin*, a wine glass, &c.

III. *When we are speaking of or to a person in a high station, or to whom we would shew respect; civility requires in French the use of Monseigneur, Monsieur, Madame or Mademoiselle †; before his or her Title; we also use them before Degrees of Kindred, and even prefix them to abusive names;*

E X A M P L E S:

1. Your father and the Prince of Nassau, &c.
Monf. *votre père et Monseign. le Prince de N.*
2. Mr. Lazy-bones. Mrs. Gad-about.
Monf. *le Paresseux.* Mlle. *la Coureuse.*

P R A X I S.

The prince of Wales has been | out of order. | The Duke
prince m. Galles indisposé due m.
 of N—— | was speaking | to your brother. Captain
parloit frère m. capitaine m.
 S—— dined yesterday with your aunt and her daughter.
dina hier avec tante f. fille f.

IV. *Substantives denoting measure, such as Ell, Yard, Foot, Inch, League, &c. require the Particle de (of) after them; but in these expressions the first Adjective of number that precedes them must also have de before it, and the Adjectives of dimension are more elegantly rendered by their substantives;*

E X A M P L E.

A ditch twenty feet deep.
Un fossé de vingt piés de profondeur.

P R A X I S.

A young man five feet nine inches high. A table
jeune c. homme m. pouce m. hauteur table f.
 two inches thick. A river ten feet deep, and four broad.
deux épaisseur rivière f. profondeur largeur.
 A fir plank seven yards long, and six inches wide.
sapin m. planche f. verge f. longueur largeur.

† The first of these two last Titles is only given, in French, to a married Gentlewoman, and the last to a single Lady, tho' she be ever so old.

10 THE CONSTRUCTION

V. *Proper names of Persons and Places do not, in general, admit of Articles, but have their relations with another Substantive expressed by the particles de or à; unless they are applied to particular objects, or used in the Plural Number;*

E X A M P L E:

Sylla gained at Rome an absolute power.

Sylla s'acquit à Rome un pouvoir absolu.

P R A X I S.

Demosthenes and Cicero were two great orators, the

first flourished at Athens, in the age of Philip and

Alexander; the other at Rome in the age of Augustus.

The Venus of Praxiteles was a master piece of statuary.

VI. *The names of Countries, Kingdoms, Provinces, Republics, Islands, Mountains, Seas, Rivers*, Winds and Seasons, being spoken of, require the Definite Article in French;*

E X A M P L E:

Europe, France, Burgundy, Mount Etna, &c.
L'Europe, la France, la Bourgogne, le Mont Etna, &c.

P R A X I S.

America is preferable to Asia and Africa. Great-

Britain contains England and Scotland; and is situate to

the north of France, from which it is parted by the Channel.

The kingdom of Portugal is situate to the west of Spain.

* The word *River*, which is often prefixed in English to a River's name, is generally left out in French; therefore, we do not say *la rivière de la Tamise*, nor *la rivière Tamise*, the river Thames, but *la Tamise*.

The two last Rules being liable to exceptions, Learners are to take notice that, with respect to Rule V. there are to be excepted—1st. Most all the renowned Italian Poets and Painters, such as le Tasse, l'Arioste, l'Arétin, le Guarini, le Tintien, &c. tho' we do not say le Michel-Ange, le Raphaël, nor le Sanazar.—2dly. Those of women for whom we have no great value, which is always the case, in French, when we mention the name of an Actress, or that of a woman of the town, before which we use also the Definite Article, even when le, la, du, or des makes part of their names; as, la Camargo, la Lesèvre, or la le Fèvre, la Dulac, or la du Lac. &c. Exam. It is a dance of Mrs. le Fèvre, c'est une danse de la le Fèvre; here is a song of Mrs. du Lac, voici une chanson de la du Lac; &c. There are also excepted from proper Names of Places, some before which custom has made the Definite Article with its variations, part of their names, such as le Caire, (Cairo) du Caire, au Caire; the most noted that fall under this exception are la Havanne, la Mèque, la Haye, la Flèche, la Hogue, le Havre, le Mans, le Pleffis, le Pui, le Quènoy, and la Rochelle. The exceptions relating to Rule VI. are—1st. The proper names of Kingdoms, Provinces, Republics, and Islands, which receive their denomination from their capital City; for they are used in French as in English, without the Article; Exam. Naples, Avignon, Venise, Malthe*, &c.—2dly. When the fore-mentioned proper names are preceded by words denoting venir de, to come from; sortir de, to go out of; demeurer en, to live in; or aller en, to go to; they are also to be used without the Article—3dly. When the same proper Names follow immediately a Substantive, they are preceded by the Particle de, or d' before a vowel, instead of the Article; Exam. le roi d'Espagne; du vin de Bourgogne; les habitans d'Irlande; &c. yet if an Adjective be used with the said Names, the general Rule is to be followed.

* Examples being sufficient here for this, and the following exceptions, the Learner may have recourse to the *Practical Grammar*, p. 146, which contains a list of those proper names which are used with and without the Article.

THE CONSTRUCTION RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE,

On the foregoing Rules for the Construction of Substantives.

One man's fault is another man's lesson. The countess
homme m. faute f. un autre leçon f. comtesse f.
 of N. is very charitable. A man's first concern is to avoid
charitable c. soin m. d'éviter
 his conscience's upbraidings; and his second the world's
reproches pl. second m. monde m.
 censure. My tutor's brother's partner's relations live in
précepteur m. frère m. associé m. parent m. demeurent
Buckinghamshire. Diana's anger was the cause of *Alecon's*
comté m. Diane colère f. cause f.
 death, and Helen's beauty Troy's destruction. St. Paul's
mort f. Hélène beauté f. Troie ruine f.
 church is 500 feet long within; 100 feet broad at the
église f. en dedans large à
 entrance; but 249 from the porticos. The courage of
entrée f. d'un portique à l'autre courage m.
 Achilles and *Hector*, the valour of Diomedes and *Ajax*,
Achille valeur f. Diomède
 the fidelity of Andromache and *Penelope*, are celebrated in
fidélité f. Andromaque célèbres
 the writings of Homer, who was of Smyrna or Chios.
écrit m. Homère Smyrne Chios
 Raphael, Titian, Tasso and Ariosto lived in the time of the
Raphael Titien Tasse Arioste vivoient tems m.
 Medicis. Iceland, situate to the North of Europe, is 400 miles
Médecis pl. Islande située nord m. a
 long and 150 broad, and belongs to the King of Denmark.
longueur largeur appartient roi m. Danemarque
 The Tiber, a river of Italy, has its source in Mount Appen-
Tibre m. rivière f. Italie sa dans Appen-
 nine, passes by Rome, and falls into the Mediterranean, at
nin passe se jette Méditerranée f.
Ofsia. The famous canal of Languedoc, in France, is 100
fameux m.
 miles long; and procures a communication between the
mille procure entre
 Mediterranean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean.
Atlantique.

RULES for the Construction of ADJECTIVES.

- I. **A FRENCH Adjective must be of the same Gender and Number as the Substantive it has a reference to;**

E X A M P L E :

A little boy and a little girl;
Un petit garçon et une petite fille.

P R A X I S.

The first picture. The second street. A
premier m, e f. tableau m. second m, e f. rue f.
 fine garden. Two fine flowers. A bad
beau m; elle f. fleur f. mauvais m, e f.
 rider upon a good horse. A good lock upon a
cavalier m. bon m, ne f. serrure f. sur
 bad door. I have got a little bird in a small cage.
porte f. oiseau m. dans cage f.

II. If an Adjective belongs to several Substantives of different Genders, it is to agree in Gender and Number with the last; but if a verb, or any other word should be between the last Substantive and the Adjective, in that case the Adjective must be of the Masculine Gender and in the Plural;

E X A M P L E S:

1. His face and hands covered,
Son visage et ses mains couvertes;
2. His hands and face covered,
Ses mains et son visage couvert;
3. His face and hands are covered,
Son visage et ses mains sont couverts.

* For the surest and readiest way of finding the different Gender of Adjectives, this mark (-) is used to indicate where the Feminine termination takes place; Example, *beau m, elle f*; write *beau m, belle f. &c.*

P R A X I S.

Mr. F—— came yesterday | to our house | with a coat
vint bier chez nous habit m.
 and waistcoat full of spots. Your master and your
veste f. plein m, e f. maître m.
 mistress are very civil. Our man-servant and our maid-
maîtresse f. civil m, e f. valet m. ser-
 servant are idle, saucy, and extremely proud.
vante f. difi-f m, ve f. insolent m, e f. orgueilleux-x m, se f.

III. If an Adjective is used without a Substantive, the French Adjective must then be of the Masculine Gender ;

E X A M P L E.

The industrious are praised ;
Les industrieux sont loués.

P R A X I S.

The slothful shall be punished, and the diligent
pareilleu-x m, se f. puni diligent m, e f.
 rewarded. The ignorant are despised, but the learned
récompense ignorans mépris savant
 esteemed. The virtuous are respected even | by the |
estimé vertueu-x m, se f. respecté même dès
 wicked. Death spares neither the rich nor the poor
méchans mort f. n'épargne ni riche c. ni pauvre c.

IV. Verbal Adjectives, that is, Participles used adjectively, must always be placed, in French, after their Substantives * ;

E X A M P L E S:

He is a dead man ; It is a convincing proof ;
C'est un homme mort. C'est une preuve convainquante.

* Except in these two expressions *la morte saison*, the dead time of the year ; *morte eau*, the slack or dead water ; a sea term, expressing the time of the tide at the height of the flood, just before it returns again.

OF ADJECTIVES.

15

P R A X I S.

An inhabited country. *habité pays m.* A frequented place. *fréquenté lieu m.* A forsaken house. *abandonnée*
maison f. A broken stick. *rompue bâton m.* Two furnished rooms. *garni m, e f. chambre f.* A gilt frame. *dorée*
bordû e f. Six fried soles. *frite m, e f. sole f.* Two boiled cods. *bouilli, m, e f. morûe f.*
 Some pickled cucumbers; a candy'd orange.
mariné concombre m. confite orange f.

V. *Adjectives expressing any Colour*, Form, Elementary, and Physical Quality, or Names of Nations; as those ending in ique, esque, ile, and ule; are put after Substantives;*

E X A M P L E:

A round table; A Scotch officer;
Une table ronde. Un officier Ecoissois.

P R A X I S.

Some white wine; brown bread; black stockings. *A*
blanc vin m. bis pain m. noir bas m, pl.
 red ribbon. A square box. A cold country. *A*
ruban m. quaré m, e f. boîte f. froid pays m.
 warm wind. Italian proverbs. A French servant.
chaud vent m. proverbe m. domestique m.

VI. *The Adjective cher (dear), denoting Price, is placed after, and signifying Affection, before its Substantive. We have others, which, like this, vary their position according to the sense they imply; see the Practical Grammar; p. 214;*

E X A M P L E:

A dear hat, my dear sister;
Un chapeau cher, ma chère sœur.

* Custom has however authorised *blanc-bec*, to denote a young man without experience; *blanc-manger*, a culinary term; *blancs-manteaux*, a sort of triars; *un rouge-gorge*, a robin-red-breast; *un verd-galand*, a brisk spark.

P R A X I S.

My dear child | there is | a dear book, and dear
enfant m. voilà livre m. cher m., e f.
 buckles. Your dear aunt is married. My dear *papa* is
boucle f. tante f. marié m., e f.
 sick. My dear soul | these are | very dear ruffles.
malade f. ame f. ce sont fort manchette f.

VII. *The Adjective new (neuf and nouveau) must be rendered by neuf* and placed after its Substantive, when it is said of Material things, the object of Mechanic Arts ... and by nouveau*, which may be placed either before or after, when it is said of Spiritual things, the object of Liberal Arts;*

E X A M P L E:

A new coat, a new scheme;
Un habit neuf, un nouveau projet.

P R A X I S.

He has spoiled his new hat, and his new clothes. She
gâté chapeau m. habit m.
 has lost her new ribbon. I have read the new comedy.
perdu ruban m. lu comédie f.
 Have you bought the new pamphlet. Mistress D —
acheté brochure f. Madame
 has lately built a new house in Oxfordshire.
bâti maison f. dans comté m.

VIII. *When there are but two Adjectives in a Sentence relating to a Substantive, it is sometimes indifferent to put them after or before it; but if there are three or more, they must be placed after it, with the Particle et (and) before the last;*

* The feminine gender of *neuf* is *neuve*, and of *nouveau* is *nouvelle*; in other cases we make use of *nouveau*; Exam. new wine, *vin nouveau*; the new viceroy, *le nouveau viceroy*; except in *pain frais*, new bread; *lait doux*,

OF ADJECTIVES.

17

EXAMPLE:

A good, sober and virtuous wife;
Une femme bonne, sobre, et vertueuse.

P R A X I S.

A wise, just, and bountiful God. A cruel, inflexible,
sage c. juste c. bienfaisant m, e f. cruel m. inflexible c.
and revengeful enemy. A short and unhappy life.
vindicatif m, ve f. court m, e f. malheureux m, f. i.
A constant, sincere, and disinterested friend is scarce.
constant m, e f. sincère c. désintéressé m, e f. rare c.

IX. In speaking of Sovereigns and of the Days of the Month, Adjectives of Number are now used in French, instead of Adjectives of Order *, except these two, first and second;

EXAMPLE:

1. Lewis the first, the second, the third, &c.
Louis premier, second, trois, &c.
2. The first, the second, the third, &c. of June;
Le premier, le second, le trois, &c. de Juin.

P R A X I S.

Edward the sixth was Henry the eighth's successor. James
Edouard fut successeur m. Jacques
the second died in France | on the | fourteenth of
mourut le
September, 1701. George the third was crowned at West-
Septembre fut couronné à
minster Abbey on the 22d of September, 1761.
Abbaye f.

* In dating or speaking of the year of the world, we do not write *mille* nor *cents*, but *mil* and *cent*; Exam. in the year 1782, *l'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt-deux*, see the Note on the Numbers, in the Grammar, P. 59.

18 THE CONSTRUCTION

X. *The following Adjectives aise, avide, capable, content, digne, joyeux, las, libre, nécessaire, with their Derivatives; and verbal Adjectives, as chargé, comblé, &c. require the Particle de before the following Substantive, Pronoun or Verb, though, at, with, to, and the like, should be used in English;*

E X A M P L E:

I am overjoyed *at* his recovery;
Je suis bien aise de son rétablissement.

P R A X I S.

He is very greedy after wealth. She is charged with that
avide c. richesses pl. accusée cc
 crime. Are you able to read this book? I am satisfied
crime m. capable c. lire livre m. content
 with your answer; and you are free to go away now.
réponse f. libre vous en aller

XI. *Adjectives of Number followed by a Substantive and a Participle preterite, require the particle de to be prefixed to the Participle, which must agree with the foregoing Substantive;*

E X A M P L E:

There were ten houses burnt;
Il y eut dix maisons de brûlées.

P R A X I S.

In the last engagement between the Russians and the
dans bataille f. entre Russe
 Turks, the latter had five thousand men kill'd, and seven
Turc dernier m. mille tué m.
 wounded; the former had but three hundred men kill'd,
bleffé m. premier m. n' eurent que
 and nine wounded. Last week there were six men
neuf La semaine passée six
 drowned, in the Thames, and four hanged at Tyburn.
noyé m. Tamise f. pendu m.

Of the COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

I. A Comparative * is formed in French by putting the Particle plus before the Positive. The Superlative * is formed by prefixing le plus m, la plus f, les plus c, pl. to the Positive, according to its Gender and Number; see Gram. p. 56;

E X A M P L E S:

Gregory is younger; Amelia is the tallest;
Grégoire est plus jeune; Amélie est la plus grande.

P R A X I S.

The sun is larger and brighter than the moon. This
soleil m. éclatant que lune f.
 man appears older than you, because you have better
paraît vieux m. parceque
 clothes on. This lady is the handsomest of the three,
habît m. dame f. belle f.
 but the oldest is richer than the youngest. Princes are
mais vieille f. riche c. jeune c.
 often unhappier than the greatest part of their subjects.
malheureux partie f. sujet m.

II. When the second term of comparison expresses some portion or measure of the comparative quantity, the Particle than or by, which precedes it in English, is to be render'd by de;

E X A M P L E.

I have lost more than two guineas;
J'ai perdu plus de deux guinées.

From this Rule must be excepted these three, meilleur, better; pire, worse; moindre, less; and a few Superlatives derived from the Latin; as, sérénissime, most serene; illustrissime, most illustrious; éminentissime, most eminent; excellentissime, most excellent, &c. see the Grammar, p. 56.

P R A X I S.

It is more than six months since he bought a house for
Il y a *mois pl.* *que* *acheta* *maison f.*
 two hundred guineas, and in less than two days, he sold it
deux *guinée f.* *dans* *jour m.* *la vendit*
 for more than five hundred: it was too dear by half.
cinq *e'doit* *cher* *moitié f.*

III. *When a comparative, follow'd by the Particle que (than), precedes a verb, which is not in the Infinitive mood, the French idiom requires ne to be placed before such a verb* ;*

E X A M P L E :

He is richer than I thought ;
Il est plus riche que je ne croyois.

P R A X I S.

I am stronger than I was last year. You sing better than
fort m, e f. *passé m, e f.* *chantez*
 you did. I have taken more pains than I had done before.
sestev *pris* *de peine* *fait auparavant*
 I am less fatigued than I was. They are richer than they
fatigué m, e f. *riche c.*
 were.

Observe—1st. That there are some comparative ways of speaking in English which are to be rendered into French by plus or moins only, without expressing the Article ; EXAM. The longer the Nights are, the shorter are the Days ; plus les Nuits sont longues, plus les Jours sont courts ; &c.—2dly. That, when the Superlative is followed by a verb, of which it is not itself the subject, and a relative pronoun expressed or understood, the verb must be put, in French, in the Subjunctive ; EXAM. I am speaking of the most learned man that is, Je parle du plus habile homme qui soit ; She is the richest mistress I have ever heard of, c'est la plus riche héritière dont j'aie jamais oui

* But if the verb following *than*, is in the Infinitive mood, or if there comes before it another conjunctive particle, the *ne* must be left out ; Ex. He is happier than to command, *il est plus heureux que de commander.* She is handsomer than when I saw her, *elle est plus belle que quand je la vis.* &c.

parler; &c.—3dly. That the verb, which usually follows the particle *than* in English, after a Comparative, may elegantly be left out in French, if the Pronoun or Substantive prefixed to it relate to another Subject or Person than that mentioned in the first part of the Sentence; EXAM. You are older than she is, Vous êtes plus vieux qu'elle; and not qu'elle n'est, or qu'elle est, as in English.—4thly. That the Adjectives *tout*, *demi*, *feu*, *nud*, *fort*, *court*, with many others, deviate from the Rules of Construction before mention'd, in the following cases; *Tout* is invariable in its termination, before an Adjective of the masculine Gender, follow'd by *que*; and is expressed in English by *altho'*, *as*, or *whatever*, as the sense requires; EXAM. Les Philosophes tout éclairés or tout savans qu'ils sont, ignorent bien des choses, Philosophers as bright or as learned as they are, do not know the cause of many things; &c. Before the name of a city or town of the feminine Gender, it does not alter its termination, and causes the Adjective following, if there be any, to be of the masculine Gender; EXAM. Tout Venise en est allarmé, all Venice is alarmed at it; &c. *Demi* (*half*) is invariable in its termination, when it precedes a Substantive; but admits of an *e* if placed after it; EXAM. Dans une demi-heure, in an hour and half's time; deux demi-livres, two half pounds; dans une heure et demie; deux livres et demie; &c. *Feu* (*late*) being used before an article, or pronoun possessive follow'd by a Substantive, is also invariable in its termination; EXAM. Feu le Roi; feu la Reine; feu votre mère; feu vos tantes; but, if otherwise, it agrees in gender and number with its substantive; EXAM. Le feu Roi; la feue Reine; votre feue tante; &c. *Nud* or *nu* (*naked* or *bare*) prefixed to its substantive with an hyphen, is also invariable; thus we say and write, nu-piés; nu-jambes; nu-tête; but when it follows its substantive, it must agree with it in gender and number; as les piés nus or nuds; les jambes nues; la tête nue; &c. *Court* and *Fort*, as well as any other adjective used adverbially, such as *faux*, *haut*, *bas*, *clair*, *mauvais*, &c. are in this case invariable; EXAM. Elles sont demeurés court; ils se sont fort; elles chantent faux; &c.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the foregoing Rules for the Construction of Adjectives.

The instructions of adversity are wholesome, though
adversité f. salutaire e. quoique
 unpleasing; the lessons of prosperity are pleasing, but
désagréable c. leçons f. agréable c.
 pernicious: The first discovers sometimes concealed
pernicieux m, se f. découvrir inconnu m, e f.
 virtues, and the other hidden vices. The man of judg-
vertu f. caché m, e f. vice m. sens
 ment forms useful, but not extensive projects; it belongs
forme utile c. non pas grand m, e f. projet m. appartient
 only to the man of imagination to form vast, sublime
seulement esprit m. de former vaste c. sublime c.
 projects. Riches are uncertain, and common to the
projet m. richesses f. incertain m, e f. commun m, e f.
 good and the wicked, but honour and virtue are sure
bon m, ne f. méchant m, e f. bonheur m. sûr m, e f.
 and lasting. The Seine is longer than the Thames,
durable c. Seine f. long m, ue f. Tamise f.
 but the latter is wider and more rapid than the former.
dernier m, e f. large c. rapide c. premier m, e f.
 The wittiest and wisest man without good breeding is
spirituel m, le f. sage c. sans éducation f.
 like an unpolished piece of marble. The Havannah
comme brut m, e f. marbre m. Havanne f.
 was taken by the English | on the | twelfth of
prise Anglois m. le
 August, 1762, under the reign of George the third.
Acût sous règne m.
 Annibal was braver than any Carthaginian officer; he
Hannibal brave c. Carthaginois officier m.
 was no more than 26 years (of age), when he was
n'avoit pas an m. quand
 made a general of. The poorer people are, the less
fait général pauvre c. gens pl.
 care they have. (*Constr.* More the people are poor, less &c.)
& embarras plus moins

RULES for the Construction of PRONOUNS.

SUCH is the nature of Pronouns, that some of them are like Substantives, and some like Adjectives; but they are most of them so intricate, that I look upon the construction of this Part of speech as the most perplexing of all; therefore I will endeavour to unravel it with as much clearness and brevity as the nature of this subject will permit: but, Learners are to observe that several Pronouns being never used without verbs, it is impossible not to introduce them in the following Exercises, though it is deviating from my plan; however, this necessary anticipation will hardly give any trouble to those who have either learned the Conjugation of French Verbs, or perused carefully the Introduction.

I. *The Personal Pronouns je (I), tu (thou), il (he), nous (we), vous (you), &c. are used with Verbs as their Subjects*, either before, or after them, if they imply an Interrogation;*

E X A M P L E:

I am ready. Is he at home?
Je suis prêt. Est-il au logis?

P R A X I S.

I eat. Thou readest. He plays. We talk. You hear.
manger (1) lire (4 ir.) jouer (1) parler (1) entendre (4)
They laugh. Am I praised? Art thou blamed? Is he
rire (4 ir.) louer (1) blamer (1)
rewarded? Are they condemned? Have you received?
récompenser (1) & condamner (1) recevoir (3)
Have they done? Had they dined? Was she with you?
faire (4 ir.) diner (1) avec

* The Subject, called by the Latins the *Nominative* of the Verb, is either one or several Pronouns, or Substantives, which the Verb relates to.

II. *The Pronouns il and elle (it) sing. ils and elles plur. are used for inanimate Things as well as for living Creatures;*

E X A M P L E:

Take this book, *it* is very well bound ;
Prenez ce livre, il est fort bien relié.

P R A X I S.

Your coat is too long, and it is badly made. The door
habit m. long mal fait porte f.
 | must not | be opened; is it shut? Give me two or
ne doit pas ouvert m, e f. fermé m, e f. cu
 three apples if they are ripe. Learn this lesson, it is
pomme f. si mûr m, e f. apprenez leçon f.
 very short; and do this exercise, it is easy.
court m, e f. faites devoir m. facile.

III. *These Personal Pronouns, he, she, or they, being followed by the Relative Pronouns that, who, or whom, must never be rendered into French by il qui, elle qui, &c. but by the Demonstrative Pronouns celui qui m, celle qui f, for the singular; and ceux qui m, celles qui f, plural;*

E X A M P L E:

He or she that loves to speak much is blameable;
Celui ou celle qui aime à parler beaucoup est blâmable.

P R A X I S.

He that lives honestly is esteemed. She to whom I
vit bonnêtement estimé
 spoke is married. She that stands by her is the youngest,
parlois marié m, e f. est auprès d' elle jeune c.
 though she appears the oldest. They who despise learning
paroisse vieille f. méprisent sciences pl.
 are despicable. Happy is he who shuns bad companies.
méprisable c. Heureux fuit compagnie f.

IV. If the last mentioned Pronouns, he, she, or they, are separated in English from, that, who, or whom, the Relative *qui* or *que* must nevertheless be placed immediately after *celui* &c. and in the second State, *dont*, for *de qui*, is used;

E X A M P L E:

He is very happy who can moderate his passions ;
Celui qui peut modérer ses passions est très heureux.

P R A X I S.

They deserve being punished who disobey their masters.

mériter (1) *d'être* *punis* *désobéir* (2) *à leurs*

He is contemptible who supports idleness. She is praiseworthy who prefers a good reputation to the pleasures

méprisable *encourager* (1) *paresse* *f.* *lou-*

of this world. They have a noble soul who prefer death

able *c.* *préférer* (1) *réputation* *f.* *plaisir* *m.*

to infamy. He of whom you speak is a coward. They

monde *m.* *ame* *f.* *mort* *f.*

overload nature who drink without being dry.

infamie *f.* *parlez* *poltron* *m.*

surcargent *boivent* *avoir* *soif.*

Observe—1st. That the Personal Pronouns I and thou, being either followed by a Relative, or used immediately after the impersonal Verb *il* is, are also to be rendered by Conjunctive pronouns; Exam. I who speak to you have seen it several times, *Moi qui vous parle, je l'ai vu plusieurs fois*; It is I, and not you, *c'est moi, et non pas vous*; &c.—2^{dly}. That the Particle *ce* is frequently used instead of *il* or *elle* sing. and *ils* or *elles* Plur. Exam. He or She is a pattern of virtue, *c'est un modèle de vertu*; they are patterns of economy, *ce sont des modèles d'économie*, &c.—3^{dly}. That the Personal pronoun they is also rendered by the particle *on*, in speaking in a general sense; Exam. They do not allow that in France, *on ne permet pas cela en France*; &c. See the Use and Construction of the Particle *on*, in the beginning of the Third Part of this Book.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

THERE are 16 Conjunctive Pronouns in French, on which the following Observations are to be made, in order to remove the difficulty, which Learners often meet with in making a proper choice, and right use of them, viz.

moi *c, sing.*
toi *c, sing.* } 1st. These are placed after the second Person, in both Numbers of the Imperative Mood, of Verbs used affirmatively; and after Prepositive Particles; such as *for, with, of, to, &c.*

me *c, sing.*
te *c, sing.*
se *c, s. & p.* } 2^d. These are used immediately before verbs, and are common to both Genders; *me et te* serve for the Singular; but *se* is used for both Numbers.

lui *m, sing.*
elle *f, sing.*
soi *c, sing.*
eux *m, plur.*
elles *f, plur.* } 3^d. These Pronouns are set immediately after prepositive Particles, such as *for, with, against, of, to, &c.* But, as *soi* is not to be used indiscriminately for *lui* or *elle*, Learners should not overlook the 2^d. Remark which is annexed to the following Rules, p. 29.

lui *c, sing.*
leur *c, plur.* } 4th. These are placed after and before Verbs, if they can be resolved by to him, to her, &c.

le *m, sing.*
la *f, sing.*
les *c, plur.* } 5th. These are generally set after and before Verbs, if they cannot be construed in English with the Particle to prefixed to them.

nous *c, plur.*
vous *c, plur.* } 6th. These are placed either before or after Verbs, according to the 1st. 2^d. and 3^d. Rules.

OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS. 27

I. *The Conjunctive Pronouns of the 1st. 4th. 5th. and 6th. observation, except soi, are used after the second Person, singular or plural, of the Imperative, provided there is no Negative joined to them;*

E X A M P L E:

Give me. Bring him. Lend us.
Donnez moi. Apportez lui. Prêtez nous.

P R A X I S.

Shew me that, give it me. Bring me your exercise,
montrez cela donnez apportez devoir m.
 alter it, and afterwards write it fair. Help us. Send
corrigez ensuite mettez au-net aidez envoyez
 her some fruit. Forgive them for this time.
fruit m. pardonnez pour fois f.

II. *When two Verbs, attended with Pronouns and used in the second person of the Imperative, are joined with the Particle and it is more elegant, notwithstanding the Rule before mentioned, to place the Pronoun of the second Verb before than after it;*

E X A M P L E:

Take it and eat it;
Prenez le et le mangez.

P R A X I S.

See him and comfort him. Write to her and tell her.
voyez consolez écrivez dites
 Admonish them and correct them. Rise and get ready
réprimandez corrigez levez-vous s'apprêter (1)
 to go out. Speak to her and bring her hither to day.
à sortir parlez amenez ici.

III. *The Conjunctive Pronouns, of the 2d. 4th. 5th. and 6th. observation, are placed immediately before Verbs, if there be a Negative Particle used with those Verbs;*

E X A M P L E:

Do not throw him on the ground; he beat me.
Ne le jetez pas à terre; il me battit.

P R A X I S.

Can you send it me to-morrow? I will bring it you if
Pouvez envoyer demain apporter (1) si
 you desire it. Do you hate me? You don't answer
exiger (1) haïr (2 ir.) répondre (4)
 me. I love you with all my heart. She told me yesterday,
aimer (1) de cœur m. dire (4 ir.) hier
 that you was very troublesome to her; therefore I advise
que incommode conseiller (1)
 you to pay her short visits, and to behave better henceforth.
de rendre visite f. de vous comporter

IV. *When Conjunctive Pronouns are used with a Compound Tense, i. e. with an Auxiliary Verb and a Participle of the Preterite, they are to be placed before the Auxiliary;*

E X A M P L E:

Has he given her what he had promised her?
Lui a-t-il donné ce qu'il lui avoit promis?

P R A X I S.

Has she returned you the book which you had lent her?
rendre (4) livre m. que prêter (1)
 Have you told him that you had lent it me? Have they
dit que envoyer (1)
 ordered it? Shall they have it in time? Has he bought it?
ordonné à tems acheter (1)
 He has not seen it; I have wrote to him, but he has not
vu m. écrit mais
 yet answered me. I am much indebted to you for your —
fait réponse très redevable de

OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS. 29

V. *Conjunctive Pronouns* are also used, in French, 1st. After any Tense of the Impersonal Verb, it is. 2^{dly}. After Particles, tho' Personal Pronouns are used in English in both cases;

E X A M P L E:

It is neither *I* nor *he*, but it is *she*;
Ce n'est ni moi ni lui, mais c'est elle.

P R A X I S.

Was it he that conquered Mexico? Is it you who deny
qui conquit Mexique m. qui niez
 it? It is not I, but he and she. It was neither he nor
mais ni ni
 I, but it was either you or they. I have said it | as well
mais ou ou dit aussi bien
 as | they. Do as I, or else our master will be angry.
que faites ou bien maître sache.

Observe—1st. That the English pronouns corresponding with those contained in the third and fourth class p. 26, are often resolved into French by the Particles *en* and *y*, for either Gender and Number, and vice versa, as may be seen in the Third Part of these Exercises.—2^{dly}. That *soi* is used instead of *lui* or *elle* in sentences whose subject is a Substantive mentioned in a general and indefinite sense; Exam. Every body acts for himself, *chacun agit pour soi*; &c. But, if the Substantive is used in a definite sense, *lui* or *elle* must be used according to the Gender of their antecedent; Exam. Mr. R— minds himself only, and cares for no body else, *Mons. R—ne pense qu'à lui, et ne se soucie de personne*; &c.—3^{dly}. That *même* (*self*) is an expression which is frequently joined to the Conjunctive Pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *soi*, *lui*, *elle*, *sing.* as well as *mêmes* (*selves*) to *nous*, *vous*, *eux*, *elles*, *Plur.* in order to denote in a more particular manner, the object spoken of; Exam. Every man may himself add to the advantages and miseries of life, *tout homme peut soi-même ajouter aux avantages et aux misères de la vie*; &c.

30 THE CONSTRUCTION

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

*P*ossessive Pronouns are always placed before their Substantives, and must be of the same Gender and Number ;

E X A M P L E :

My father, my mother, and my brothers ;
Mon père, ma mère, et mes frères.

P R A X I S.

Go to my neighbour's, enquire after his son. Have you
aller chez voisin m. informez-vous de fils m.
 seen my canary-birds? Walk in our garden.
vu serin m. promenez vous jardin m.
 Examine his papers. Look for my letter. Don't
examinez papier m. cherchez lettre f.
 go out without an umbrella, your gloves and your fan.
sortez sans parasol m. gant m. éventail m.

II. *The masculine Pronouns mon, ton, son, must be used instead of the feminine ma, ta, sa, before a feminine Substantive beginning either with a Vowel or h not aspirated ;*

E X A M P L E :

It was my intention. It is his humour.
C'étoit mon intention. C'est son humeur.

P R A X I S.

His affection for me is not great. Thy sword is too
affection f. pour grand m, e f.
 long. My action is not blameable. His history is
long m, ve f. action f. blamable c. histoire f.
 very short. My clock does not go right now.
court m, e f. horloge f. va bien.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. 31

III. *Possessive Pronouns do not agree in French with the Possessor, as in English, but with the Gender of the thing possessed, i. e. with the Substantives they are prefixed to ;*

E X A M P L E :

The end of *his* cane has spoiled *her* apron ;
Le bout de sa cane a gâté son tablier.

P R A X I S.

Take up *his or her* knife. Give him *his or her* fork.
ramassez couteau m. donnez fourchette f.
 Return *her* *his or her* books. Hang up *her or his*
rendez livre m. pendre (4)
bat. Mend *her or his* pen. Clean *her or his* buckles.
chapeau m. taillez plume f. nettoyez boucle f.

IV. *Possessive Pronouns must always be repeated in French before every Substantive, when there are more than one in the Sentence ; likewise they are to be used before Substantives signifying Relation or Friendship, when we speak to them ; tho' in these two cases they are generally left out in English ;*

E X A M P L E :

Cousin, bring me *my* coat and waistcoat ;
Mon cousin, apportez moi mon habit et ma veste.

P R A X I S.

Uncle shall you be here this evening? Yes, child.
oncle m. ici soir m. enfant m.
 Brother, come hither. Do you call *sister?* I have
frère m. venez ici appeler (1) sœur m.
 lost my friends and relations. Your god-father will
perdre (4) ami m. parent m. parain m.
 assist you. His master, mistress, and guardian are dead.
aider (1) maître m. maîtresse f. tuteur m.

V. *When one of the Possessive Pronouns is before the word sake, it must be rendered into French by the Conjunctive Pronoun that answers to it, after the manner following;*

E X A M P L E:

For my sake, or for your sake;
Pour l'amour de moi, ou pour l'amour de vous.

P R A X I S.

Keep it for my sake. Do that for thy sake. Don't
 garder (1) fais cela
 tell it for his sake. Take it for her sake. Stay here
 dites prenez reflex
 for our sake. Let him do it for your sake. Go thither
 laissez y
 for their sake. Assist me for God's sake.
 offitez Dieu

Observe—1st, That, tho' mon, ton, son, which are directed to be used in the second Rule, p. 30, are not strictly grammatical, they are nevertheless always introduced, in order to avoid the cacophony the other Pronouns would occasion; yet we say still *mamie* for *mon amie*, or *m'amie*, in speaking to a very intimate friend.—2^{dly}, That, when Possessive Pronouns occur after a reflexive Verb, and before a Substantive denoting a part of the Body, they are rendered by the first state of the Definite Article, viz. *le, la, l', les*; Exam. I wash my hands and face every morning, *Je me lave les mains et le visage tous les matins*; &c. But, if we speak of a Limb affected with Cold, Heat, Hurt, or Sore, they are expressed by the third State of the Article; Exam. I have got a pain in my side, stomach, head, teeth, &c. *J'ai mal au côté, à l'estomac, à la tête, aux dents*; &c.—3^{dly}, That the Possessive Pronoun *its*, which relates to irrational objects, is elegantly expressed in French by *en*, when it can be resolved in English by *of it*, as in this Example; This plant is very common, but I don't know its properties, *cette plante est très commune, mais je n'en connois pas les vertus*; &c.

OF ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS. 33

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

I. Absolute Pronouns are used in French, as in English, to avoid the repetition of a Substantive that precedes them, with which they must agree both in Gender and Number ;

E X A M P L E :

Is that your book ? Yes, it is *mine*.
Est ce-là votre livre ? Oui, c'est le mien.

P R A X I S.

Your father and mine | are talking | together. I have
père m. parlent ensemble
 lost my seal, lend me yours. Their house is almost
perdu cachet m. prêter (1) maison f.
 opposite to ours. His lesson is long, but mine is short ;
en-à-vis de leçon f. longue mais court m., e f.
 the king was in his coach and the queen in hers. My
dans carrosse m. reine f.
 business requires more labour than yours or his.
affaire f. travail ou

II. If the Particle of is set immediately before Absolute pronouns, they are to be rendered into French by a Possessive ;

E X A M P L E :

A friend of *mine* would be very glad, &c.
Un de mes amis seroit bien aise, &c.

P R A X I S.

A kinsman of yours has obtained a pension. Two
parent m. obtenu pension f.
 servants of his robbed him. A scholar of mine has
domestique m. volèrent écolier m.
 learned to write, and speak French in four months.
appris à écrire à parler en mois m.

III. *When an Absolute Pronoun is preceded by any of the Tenses of the Verb to Be, and a Substantive used in the same sentence, the Absolute Pronoun must be rendered into French by a Conjunctive, with the Particle à (to) prefixed to it;*

E X A M P L E :

This book is mine; *Ce livre est à moi.*

P R A X I S.

This horse was mine, now it is thine. This needle

cheval m.

à présent

aiguille f.

is hers. This field was ours, and this meadow is yours.

champ m.

p. é m.

This house was his, and these trees were theirs.

maison f.

arbre m.

The gun which you bought of Mr. Smyth was mine.

fusil m.

acheter (1)

before it was his. Is that country-house, situate near South

avant que fût

maison de campagne f.

ampton, yours or his? If it was mine, I would never sell it.

si

jamais

You may observe—1st. That these Pronouns are sometimes used in French, after the manner of Substantives, but in the masculine Gender only; Exam. Il faut rendre à chacun le sien we must give every one his due; à chacun le sien n'est pas trop, every one's due is not too much; le mien & le tien sont la source de toutes les divisions, was it not for mine and thine, there would be no divisions; &c. They also figure after the same manner, in the plural Number, to denote a collection of objects; Exam. Nous & les nôtres, we and ours; vous et les vôtres, you and yours; lui et les siens, he and his &c.—2dly. That, with respect to the second Rule, when such expressions as of mine, of yours, of his, &c. are used indefinitely, they are rendered either by qui and a Conjunctive Pronoun placed after the third person of the Present-tense in the Subjunctive of the verb Etre, or before the same Tense of the verb Appartenir; Exam. I have got nothing of yours, je n'ai rien qui soit à vous, or else je n'ai rien qui vous appartienne; &c. The verb Appartenir may also be introduced in the expressions annexed to the third Rule

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

This or that, *ce* and *cet* m, *cette* f, sing.
These or those, *ces* c. pl.

I. **T**HE Pronouns *ce* and *cet* both belong to the Masculine Gender, with this difference, that *ce* is always used with words that begin with a Consonant, and *cet* only with such words as begin with a Vowel or *h* not aspirated;

E X A M P L E :

In *this* world. With *this* man.
Dans ce monde. Avec cet homme.

P R A X I S.

This horse trots well. This man talks too loud.
cheval m. trotte parle trop haut.

This table is too wide. These glasses are not clean.
table f. large verre m. net m.

This work will not be finished this summer.
ouvrage m. fini été m.

These boys and those girls run faster than that
garçon m. fille f. courent que

woman. This hero's name is very well known. This
femme f. héros m. nom m. fort connu.

That is * the Gentleman's, and not yours.
chapeau m. Monsieur non pas

* In this and the like expressions, the verb *is* may be rendered either by *est*, or by *appartient*; but, whatever verb is made use of in French, the Substantive must always be placed in the third State, that is, with *à* or *au*, &c.

36 THE CONSTRUCTION

II. *The Pronouns celui m. celle f. (this or that) ceux m. celles f. (these or those) are used in French as in English, to avoid the repetition of the Substantives they relate to;*

E X A M P L E:

The king's coach and *that* of the queen;
Le carrosse du roi et celui de la reine.

P R A X I S.

The city of London is bigger than that of
Paris. This house is smaller than that of your
 brother. He has taken the best, and has given
 me those which | are good for nothing | .

III. *The Particles ci and là are annexed to the Pronouns celui, celle, &c. when we mean to point more particularly at an object, in which case the Substantive is not expressed;*

E X A M P L E:

Your horse is as fine as *this*;
Votre cheval est aussi beau que celui-ci.

P R A X I S.

Eat that apple, and I will eat this. These pears are better
 than those. Virtue and vice produce different effects;
 this causes the misery of men, that makes them happy.
 Here are | my books, but these are good, and those bad.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. 37

IV. *The Pronouns ceci and cela (this and that) are used as Substantives, and not as Adjectives, and serve to indicate inanimate objects, or for accidents collectively mentioned;*

EXAMPLE:

This is more surprising than that;
Ceci est plus surprenant que cela.

PRAXIS.

That is admirable. This is very fine. In saying that
admirable c. beau m. disant
he looked at me. This will occasion a new law-suit. I
regarda occasionnera procès m.
did not think of that. All that is true. This was
pensois à tout vrai
approved by a few, but that displeased the whole company.
aprouvé de quelque-uns déplait à compagnie f.

Observe — 1st. That *ce* is also frequently used in French as a Substantive, and even as a whole Phrase, in which circumstance it precedes *dont*, *qui*, *or* *que*; Exam. That of which you spoke to me yesterday is done, *ce dont vous me parlates hier est fait*; that which afflicts you now is nothing in comparison of that which grieves me, *ce qui vous afflige à présent n'est rien en comparaison de ce qui me chagrine*; &c. — 2^{dly}. That *ce* is often construed with the verb *Etre*, in order to denote, in a more concise manner, the possession of things, and is used for both the Singular and Plural Number; Exam. Is that your horse? *est-ce là votre cheval?* yes it is, *oui ce l'est*; are these your gloves? *font-ce là vos gants?* yes they are, *oui ce les sont*; &c. — 3^{dly}. That these Pronouns *icelui m*, *icelle f*, *sing.* *iceux m*, *icelles f. plur.* are only Law terms; which are used to prevent equivocations, but never admitted in another style.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

I. **THE** Pronouns *qui* (who, that or which *) and *que* (whom, that or which *) are used for both Numbers and Genders, with any Substantives whatever;

E X A M P L E:

The sun	} that	{ warms,	{ <i>Le soleil</i>	} <i>qui</i>	{ <i>échauffe.</i>			
The moon						{ shines,	{ <i>La lune</i>	{ <i>luit.</i>
The stars						{ sparkle,	{ <i>Les étoiles</i>	{ <i>brillent.</i>

P R A X I S.

The girl who has bought me this pen-knife, is young
fille f. acheter (1) canif m. jeune c.
 pretty, and obliging. The boy to whom I spoke
joli m, e f. obligeante f. garçon m. parler (1)
 is audacious. The woman whom God formed with
audacieux m. femme f. que Dieu forma de
 one of Adam's ribs was the cause of his sin.
côte f. cause f. péché m.
 The books which you read are good, but very difficult
livre m. lisez bon très difficile
 to understand. I detest those men that are deceitful.
entendre déteste trompeur m.

II. Though the Relative Pronouns that, which, &c. are sometimes elegantly left out in English, it is not so in French, but must always be expressed where the sense directs their use;

* Those Pronouns are to be rendered by *qui*, when they are the subject of a Verb, and by *que* when they are the object; but when they are preceded by any Particle, such as *of*, *to*, *from*, *with*, *against*, &c. they are only rendered by *qui* for rational Beings, or Things personified, as *Fortune*, *Fate*, &c. But, for irrational Creatures and inanimate objects, by *lequel*, *duquel*, *sing.* &c.

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS. 39

E X A M P L E :

The wine we drank yesterday was very good ;
Le vin que nous bumes hier étoit fort bon.

P R A X I S.

The company he keeps is not honest. The reasons
compagnie f. fréquenter (1) honnête c. raison f.
 you give are not solid. The watch you see
donner (1) solide c. montre f. voyez
 has cost ninety guineas. The exercise you
couter (1) guinée f. devoir m.
 have given me to write is too long and too hard.
donner (1) à écrire trop difficile c.

III. If the Pronoun whose stands for of whom or of which, it is rendered by dont; but if it should be used interrogatively, you are to render it by à qui (to whom);

E X A M P L E :

Ferdinand whose courage is known ;
Ferdinant dont le courage est connu.

P R A X I S.

The man whose conduct is regular, and whose actions
homme m. conduite f. régulier m., e f.
 are upright, is happier than him who | abandons
honnête c. heureux m. s'aban-
 himself | to his inclinations. Whose children are these?
donne inclination f. enfant m.

IV. The Pronoun which used interrogatively before the particle of is to be rendered by lequel m. laquelle f. &c. Being immediately placed before an Adjective or Substantive, by quel m. quelle f. &c. When used for the Subject of a verb, by qui; and for the Object by que. Lastly, if it is preceded by of, it should be resolved by dont, or duquel m. &c.

40 THE CONSTRUCTION

E X A M P L E:

Which of these two pictures?

Lequel de ces deux tableaux?

P R A X I S.

Which of these pens will you have? that which is
the shortest. ^{plume f.} Which page shall I write upon? on that
^{court m, e f.} which is the least dirty. ^{page f.} The house of which you | was
^{sale c.} speaking | and which you wanted to buy, is sold.
^{maison f.} ^{parlez} ^{voulez} ^{acheter} ^{vendue.}

V. The relative pronoun what is to be rendered by *ce qui* before verbs used either affirmatively or negatively; by *ce que* before a personal Pronoun; by *que* before verbs used interrogatively; by *quoi* when used singly, and when it is either preceded, or followed by a Particle; and by *quel m. quelle f.* &c. before a Substantive, according to its gender and number;

E X A M P L E:

Say what is true, and do what I bid you;
Dites ce qui est vrai, et faites ce que je vous ordonne.

P R A X I S.

What grieves me is that he is gone out without leave.
^{chagrine} ^{c'est} ^{soit} ^{forti} ^{permissif}
What * shall I say to his tutor? What we do hastily
^{dirai-je} ^{précepteur m.} ^{faisons}

* The most grammatical way of rendering this word is by *que*, according to the Rule, yet one may make use of this expression, *qu'est ce que* in this or the like question, with the verb used affirmatively thus; *Qu'est ce que je dirai?* but the only manner of rendering what before the impersonal *it is*, used interrogatively, is by *Qu'est ce-que*; Ex, What is it, *Qu'est que c'est*; &c.

is often imperfect. What I say is true. What is it?

imparfait *dis* *vrai*

What | were you speaking | of? Do you hear what I say?

parliez-vous *entendez-vous* *dis*

What, and what then? What books have you bought?

donc *livre m.* *acheté*

You are moreover to observe—1st. That, when *dont* is used instead of *duquel m*, *de la quelle*, &c. as mentioned in the fourth Rule, p. 39, it must be immediately preceded by the Substantive it relates to, and followed by a Substantive or Pronoun, which is the Subject of a verb, as in this Example; The House of which you was speaking, is mine, *la maison dont vous parliez, m'appartient!* &c.—2^{dly}. That the pronoun *what* used in sentences of admiration and exclamation, before the indefinite Article, is elegantly left out in French, and the indefinite Article rendered by the definite; but in this case, the Substantive, which is repeated in the second phrase, must be preceded by *que*; EXAM. What a good king, the king of Great Britain is! *Le bon roi que le roi de la Grande-Bretagne!*—3^{dly}. That as we often part the Relative *qui* or *que* from its Antecedent, either for elegance sake, or on account of the length of sentences, a Conjunctive Pronoun is introduced before the Relative, in order to preserve the regularity of the construction required in this case; EXAM. *Il est étonnant que Henri IV. ait péri si malheureusement par la main d'un de ses sujets, lui qui ne recherchoit que le bonheur de ses peuples; It is astonishing that Henry IV. should have been so basely killed as he was, by the hand of one of his subjects; seeing that he had nothing more at heart than the happiness of his people; &c.*—4^{thly}. That *qui* is as frequently repeated, in French, as other Pronouns are; EXAM. *Je parle d'un Homme qui mange, qui boit, qui dort plus qu'un autre; I speak of a Man who eats, drinks, and sleeps more than another; &c.*

This is what is most material or important to be understood concerning the Construction of this intricate Part of Speech; what might have been added is too tedious for this Performance.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the foregoing Rules for the Construction of Pronouns.

We wish no evil to those we despise, but to those who
souhaitons mal méprisons mais
 have a right to despise us. Man is the only creature
raison de seul m, e f.
 whose happiness is imperfect, and who has something in
bonheur m. quelque-chose
 him that disdains the imperfection of his | own being |
dédaigner (1) existence f.
 If we consider him in his present state, he seems born
considérer (1) dans état m. paraît né
 only to multiply his species in this world, and transmit
pour augmenter monde m. transmettre
 it to posterity; what advantages, what privileges has he
postérité f. avantage m. privilège m.
 then above the beasts and birds? These here, his soul,
au dessus des bête oiseau ame f.
 which is immortal, and capable of acquiring knowledge
immortel m, e f. d' acquérir sciences pl.
 As soon as | Solomon abandoned himself to love, he lost
dès que Solomon s'abandonner (1) amour perdre (4)
 his reason. Achilles was invulnerable all over his body,
raison f. Achille partout corps m.
 except in his heel. What is admirable in Peter the
taïen m. Pierre
 Great is not his success, but his resolution and travels.
succès m. résolution f. voyage m.
 They deserve to be encouraged, who undertake to
mériter m. encourager (1) entreprendre (4 ir.) de
 serve the public. He who is solicitous to know
public m. a envie de savoir
 every satirical expression which is vented against him,
satirique c. lancée contre
 leads a life of | anxiety. Say what is well and do what
vit dans dites bien faites
 is just. Be what you appear, and appear what you are.
juste paroissez

RULES for the Construction of VERBS.

THE constant concomitants of a Verb are a *Subject* and an *Object*. The Subject, called by the Latins the *Nominative* of the Verb, is either one or several Substantives or Pronouns, which do what the Verb signifies, placed either before or after the Verb. EXAMP. *Horses neigh, Dogs bark, do you hear? is he there? &c.* The Object, called, by the same, the *Case* of the Verb, is the Substantive or Pronoun that depends upon the Verb; EXAM.

God preserves the World;

These words are easily distinguished; for the Subject is *God*, the Verb is *preserves*, and the Object is *the World*.

I. *A personal Verb must be of the same Number and Person * with the Pronoun or Substantive that goes before it;*

E X A M P L E:

I speak, thou sighest, and he reads;
Je parle, tu soupîres, et il lit.

P R A X I S.

Virtue excelleth all things, and has its reward in
vertu f. surpasser (1) chose f. récompense f. en
 itself. We are the children of God, and must
être (4 ir) enfant m. Dieu devoir (3)
 observe his law. Our happiness depends on religion.
observer (1) loi f. bonheur m. dépendre (4) de

* Verbs have three Persons in each Number, denoted by the Pronouns *I, thou, he, or she*, singular; *we, ye or you, they*, plural. Observe that *I* and *we* always denote the first Person; *thou, you* and *ye* the second; *he, she, they* and *any substantive* whatsoever, the third; let their disposition be as it will.

44 THE CONSTRUCTION.

II. *When two Verbs, following each other, have a personal pronoun for their Subject, it is useless to repeat the pronoun, if they are in the same tense; but should the two verbs be in different tenses, it is necessary to repeat it in French;*

EXAMPLES:

1. We have seen your father, and have invited him ;
Nous avons vu votre père, et l'avons invité.
2. I say and will always say that you are &c.
Je dis et je dirai toujours que vous êtes &c.

P R A X I S.

I will go | and see | Mrs. Grantham, and will desire her
aller (1) voir prier (1)
 to come immediately. She loves compliments, and
de sur le champ aimer (1)
 receives them always with pleasure. I have seen Mr.
recevoir (3) avec voir (3ir)
Durand to-day, and will dine with him to-morrow.
aujourd'hui diner (1) demain.

III. *A Verb that has more than one Substantive or Pronoun for its Subject, must be rendered by the Plural Number;*

EXAMPLE:

The king and the queen are in good health;
Le roi et la reine sont en bonne santé.

P R A X I S.

Patience and perseverance are virtues often necessary.
patience f. persévérance f. vertu f. nécessaire c.
 Wit and sense are preferable to beauty. Anger, revenge
esprit m. jugement m. beauté f. colère f. vengeance f.
 and obstinacy, seem unworthy of a reasonable being.
entêtement m. paroître (3 ir.) raisonnable c. être m.

IV. If a Verb has for its Subject Pronouns of different Persons, it must agree with the First Person, rather than with the Second; and with the Second rather than the Third*;

E X A M P L E:

He and I are satisfied;
Lui et moi nous sommes contents.

P R A X I S.

My brother and he are often together. You and I
frère m. souvent ensemble
believe that the happiness of this world consists in fulfilling the religious and civil duties prescribed to us. His
croire (4 ir.) que félicité f. monde m. à remplir
neighbour and I are resolved to go to Scarborough by sea,
voisin m. résolu d'aller à mer
and to return by land. Steven and you | are talking
de retourner terre. Etienne parler (1)
louder than I. She and they will go to town to-morrow.
haut que eux et demain.

V. After Collective Words, such as number, most, &c. followed by a Substantive in the Plural Number; the Verb is to be put in the Plural Number; but if they come before a Substantive Singular, the Verb is to be as usual in the Singular;

E X A M P L E:

Most of his friends forsook him;
La plupart de ses amis l'abandonnèrent.

* Those who are not versed in the Rudiments of Grammar are to observe, that the quality, and not the accidental disposition, of these Pronouns is here alluded to; therefore *I* always indicates and requires the first Person, *thou* the second, *he, she, or it*, the third; and so on for the Plural: see Introd. p. iv.

P R A X I S.

A great number of | learned men | maintain that the
nombre m. survans soutenir (2 ir.)
 earth turns round the sun; most people are of this
tourner (1) au-tour du la plupart du monde
 opinion. The generality of men follow their inclinations.
opinion f. plus grande partie f. suivre (4 ir) inclination f.

*With respect to Rule IV. it must be observed that the Con-
 junctive Pronouns moi or toi can never be made the Subject of
 a Verb, whether they are used singly or after a Substantive or
 Pronoun; therefore it would be wrong to say lui et moi som-
 mes contens, and likewise mon Frère et moi croyons que
 le bonheur consiste, &c. for the verb, in such sentences,
 requires an immediate Personal pronoun, for its Subject, which
 is the reason that nous is introduced in the Example annexed to
 that Rule: yet the Pronouns lui and eux may, either con-
 jointly or separately after a Substantive, become the Subject of
 a Verb without the concurrence of a Personal pronoun; Exam.
 Lui & eux sont allés à Paris, he and they are gone to Paris;
 Mon frère et lui devoient partir ensemble, my brother and
 he were to set out together; th' neither of these two last Pro-
 nouns ought to be used alone, in a regular speech, for the Sub-
 ject of a Verb, without the Adjective seul; Exam. Lui seul
 peut faire cela, he can do that alone; eux seuls ont droit de
 le vendre, they alone have a right to sell it—As to the last
 Rule Mr. Restaut is of opinion that all collective words
 require the verb they are the subject of, in the plural Number;
 but our best writers do not follow this Rule: see this Gram.
 p. 62.—It may not be amiss to observe here that after these
 words encore, aussi, ainsi, tel, hélas, peut-être, du-moins,
 au-moins, en vain, and à-peine, the Personal pronoun is
 usually placed after the verb, altho' the phrase implies an
 affirmation; Exam. Aussi suis-je résolu de m'en tenir à
 mon premier projet, therefore I am resolved to abide by my
 first plan; &c.*

Of VERBS used INTERROGATIVELY.

- I. *If the Interrogation is made by a Personal Pronoun, the Pronoun is to be placed in French after the Verb**;

E X A M P L E :

Are you sick? Do you speak French?
Etes-vous malade? Parlez-vous François?

P R A X I S.

Did you see me? Do you hear him? Shall you stay
voir (3 ir) entendre (4) rester (1)
 a long time. Have they been punished? Had you
long tems punir (2)
 admonished them before? Do they live in London?
avertir (2) auparavant demeurer (1) à

II. *When there is an Interrogation in the third Person of the singular Number, if the Verb ends with a Vowel, this (-t-) must be put between the Verb and the Pronoun il or elle.*

E X A M P L E :

When will he return from the country?
Quand reviendra-t-il de la campagne?

P R A X I S.

Does he speak French? Will he be with us? Shall he
parler (1) être (4 ir)
 go out? Has he told it you? When will she return to town?
sortir (2 ir) dire (4 ir) quand revenir (2 ir) en
 Does she dance well? Has she ever sung in public?
danfer (1) chanter (1)

* We deviate from this rule, with verbs ending with two consonants before e, je, as such a transposition would occasion too disagreeable a sound was it admitted; therefore, instead of *cours-j, mens-j, perd-j, &c.* in these cases we denote the interrogation by *est-ce-que*; Exam. *est-ce-que je cours, &c.*

III. If the Interrogation is not made by a Personal Pronoun, you must place the Subject of the Verb before the Verb, and one of the Personal Pronouns il, elle, Sing. or ils, elles, Plur. after it, according to the Number and Gender of its Substantive ;

E X A M P L E :

Has your brother wrote his exercise?

Votre frère a-t-il fait son devoir ?

P R A X I S.

Is our supper ready? ^{*souper m. prêt*} Has the shoe-maker brought my shoes? ^{*cordonnier m. apporter (1)*} Are yours made? ^{*foulier m. faire (4 ir)*} Do your scholars learn the irregular verbs by heart? ^{*écuyer m. apprendre (4 ir)*} Is this gentleman known? ^{*irrégulier m. par cœur monsieur connaître (4 ir)*} Did Mr. B— speak to him? ^{*parler (1)*} Why is poverty despised? ^{*pourquoi mépriser (1)*}

With respect to the First Rule of this Section, Learners are to observe, that when an Interrogation is made with the first Person of the Present tense of Verbs of the first Conjugation, or with that of the Preterite of such Verbs as end with an e not accented, that e is to be changed into an é acute, before the Pronoun je, for the sake of pronunciation; Exam. Do I speak loud enough? Parlé-je assez haut? Had I seen it? L'eusse-je vu? Do I dance better than he? Dansé-je mieux que lui? &c.—The Auxiliary Verbs, do, did, shall, will, &c. which are usually used in answer to an interrogation, must always be rendered in French, as if attended with the verb expressed in the first part of the sentence; EXAM. Will you come to-morrow? Viendrez-vous demain? Yes, I will. Oui, je viendrai, and not Oui, je veux. It is the same with any Person of the Auxiliaries have and am, standing for a compound-tense expressed in the question to which we answer; EXAM. Have you seen him? Yes, I have. L'avez-vous vu? Oui, je l'ai vu; &c. In which cases the verb repeated is also attended by the Substantive or Pronoun it relates to.

Of VERBS used NEGATIVELY.

I. **WHEN** the Person of a Verb is used Negatively, that is with one of these Negatives, no, not, nothing, nobody, never, you are to place *ne* before the Verb, and *pas* or *point*, *rien*, *personne*, or *jamais*, after the Verb;

EXAMPLE:

I have *not* yet learned my lesson;
Je n'ai pas encore appris ma leçon.

P R A X I S.

We must take care not to expose ourselves to danger.
devoir (3) prendre garde de s'exposer (1) danger m.
 They do not seem concerned with that. Merit is
paraître (4 ir) toucher (1) de mérite m.
 not always rewarded, and vice does not always triumph.
récompenser (1) vice m. triompher (1)

II. These negative Particles *pas* or *point* are to be left out after these two expressions *que ne* and *s'il ne*, and may be omitted after the Verbs *oser*, *cesser*, *pouvoir*, and *savoir*;

EXAMPLE:

I cannot comprehend what he means;
Je ne puis comprendre ce qu'il veut dire.

P R A X I S.

Why don't you go to the play this evening? I
que aller (1 ir) comédie f. soir m.
 dare not do it, and I know not for what. If you do
oser (1) faire (4 ir) savoir (3 ir) pour si
 not leave off teasing me, I will complain of you.
cesser (1) agacer (1) se plaindre (4 ir)

There is a remark necessary to be made on the first Rule of this Section, which is—That, in the Present of the Infinitive Mood of Verbs, the Particles *ne pas* are more elegantly used together before it, than in being parted, as they are directed to be with the other variations; Exam. *Je vous ordonne de ne pas sortir aujourd'hui*, I bid you not to go out this day; &c.—As to Rule II. Observe, that besides the four mentioned verbs, after which *pas* or *point* is usually left out, we also generally omit the same Particles in the six following cases, viz—1st. Before the particle *ni* repeated; Exam. *Je ne veux ni de ses présens, ni de ses caresses*, I want neither his presents, nor his flatteries; &c.—2dly. After the particle *que* (than) as before mentioned, p. 20.—3dly. After these words *nul*, *personne*, *rien*; Exam. *Nul ne fait cela*, no one knows that; *personne ne doit le faire*, no body ought to do it; *rien ne s'est fait sans son consentement*, nothing has been done without his consent; it may not be amiss to take notice here that *personne* and *rien* are also used in sentences of interrogation, admiration, or doubt, without any negative Particle; in which sense *personne* signifies any body, or somebody, and *rien* means any thing or something; Exam. *Y a-t-il personne au monde qui pense comme vous?* is there any body in the world that thinks as you do? *Avez-vous vu rien de semblable?* have you seen any thing like it?—4thly. When the particle *but* is rendered by *ne* and *que*, as also after these expressions *à moins que*, *de peur que*, and *depuis que*, as mentioned in the Rules relating to these Particles.—5thly. After the relative pronoun governing the Subjunctive mood; Exam. *Est-il quelqu'un qui ne fasse de même?*—6thly. After the impersonal verb *il y a* followed by *que*; Exam. *Il y a dix ans que je ne l'ai vu*; as also before the particle *plus*; Exam. *On ne porte plus de cimiers à présent*, and before de expressing some period of time; Exam. *Je ne lui parlerai de quinze jours*—Lastly. After the verbs *Dire* and *Voir*, when the first is followed by *mot*, and the second by *goute*; Exam. *Ne dites mot*, speak not a word; *il ne voit goutte*, he cannot see at all; &c.

Of VERBS used with an INTERROGATION and a NEGATION.

IF a Verb is used with an Interrogation and a Negation together, ne is to be placed before the Verb, and pas, or point, rien, personne, &c. after the Pronoun Personal;

E X A M P L E:

Shall you *not* be at home this evening?

Ne serez-vous pas au logis ce soir?

P R A X I S.

Don't you hear what I say to you? Has he brought you
entendre (4) dire (4 ir) apporter (1)
 nothing? Has he not informed you that I have no money?

Is not the duke of B—— returned to England? Have
fuit savoir argent
duc m. revenir (2 ir) en Angleterre
 you not seen him? Did you not expect him so soon?

Do you not like to learn French? Has not your father
voir (3 ir) attendre (4) si tôt
aimer (1) à apprendre
 ordered you to do it? Are you not convinced of its

commander (1) de convaincre (4 ir)
 usefulness in all stations of life? Have I not told you, that
utilité f. état m. vie f. dire (4 ir)
 people of almost every profession study it now in England?
gens pl. presque étudier (1)

We also ask a question with a negative after this manner ; n'est-ce pas que, especially when we take that for certain which is the object of our enquiry ; and want either to be confirmed in it, or have it approved by others : for instance, when I say N'est-ce pas qu'elle est très-jolie, or Elle est très-jolie, n'est ce pas? She is very pretty, isn't she? I intimate that I think the person spoken of is very pretty and want to have my opinion approved of, by those the question is addressed to.

Of REFLECTIVE VERBS.

THESE Verbs differ from others, as to their grammatic form, in being conjugated, in French, with two Pronouns, that is with the personal Pronouns *je, tu, il,* and the Conjunctive Pronouns *me, te, se,* sing. *nous, vous, se,* plur. instead of which, these expressions *myself, thyself, himself,* and the like, are sometimes used in English; Exam. I hurt myself, *je me blesse*; thou hurtest thyself, *tu te blesses,* &c. But, most frequently omitted, which is the case with many Neuter Verbs; Exam. I walk, *je me promène,* thou walkest, *tu te promènes,* &c. or else *I rise,* *je me lève,* &c. which verbs are known in Dictionaries, from all others, by having the Pronoun *se* prefixed to the Infinitive; as *se Promener,* to Walk; *se Lever,* to Rise; *s'Abstenir,* to Abstain from; &c. See the Introduction, p. viii. wherein a model of their conjugation is inserted.

I. In rendering the simple Tenses of these Verbs affirmatively or negatively, there is no difficulty; but, in their Compound tenses, you are to use, with the Conjunctive Pronoun, the auxiliary *Etre* (to Be) and not *Avoir*, as in English;

E X A M P L E:

I have walked; I have not walked;
Je me suis promené; je ne me suis point promené.

P R A X I S.

We went into his apartment; he explained himself in
se rendre (4) *apartement m.* *s'expliquer* (1) *en*
 two words. You have stopt too soon. They had
mot m. *s'arrêter* (1) *trop tôt*
 retired. He will complain of you. He flattered him-
se retirer (1) *se plaindre* (4 *ir*) *se flatter* (1)
 self too-much. Will you engage to do it this week?
trop *s'engager* (1) *semaine s.*

II. If *Reflected Verbs* are used in the *Imperative Mood* affirmatively, the *Conjunctive Pronouns* *toi, nous, vous,* are to be placed after the *Verb*; but if negatively, *te, se, nous, vous,* must be prefixed to the *Verb*, as the sense requires;

E X A M P L E:

Do walk; Do not walk;
Promène toi; Ne te promène pas.

P R A X I S.

Amuse yourselves in my room: retire from hence. Let
s'amuser (1) chambre & se retirer (1) ici
us rise quickly; let them appear immediately. Do
se lever (1) se montrer (1)
not present yourselves before my eyes for the future.
se présenter (1) devant à l'avenir

III. When *Reflective Verbs* are used with an *Interrogation* affirmative, the *Conjunctive Pronoun* is to remain before the *Verb*, and the *Personal Pronoun* to be placed after it*;

E X A M P L E:

Shall I surrender? Does he stop?
Me rendrai-je? S'arrête-t-il?

P R A X I S.

Does he sit down? Will you embark? Did he grow
s'asseoir (3 ir) s'embarquer (1) s'apri-voi-
tame? Has he grown rich? Is the sky grown dark?
ser (1) s'enrichir (2) ciel m. s'obscurcir (2)
Has he equipped himself? Have you made yourself hoarse?
s'équiper (2) s'enrouer (1)

* In Compound tenses this order is the same, only the Participle is last; but, if a Substantive is the Subject of a Verb, a Personal pronoun must be placed betwixt the Auxiliary and Participle, as by Rule III. p. 48.

54 THE CONSTRUCTION

IV. *The same Verbs being conjugated with an Interrogation Negative, take the Particle ne before the Conjunctive Pronouns me, te, se, Sing. nous, vous, se, Plur. and pas, point, &c. after the Personal Pronouns, as other Verbs do;*

E X A M P L E:

Does he not sacrifice himself?
Ne se sacrifie-t-il pas ?

P R A X I S.

Don't we retire? *se retirer (1)* Does she not stir? *se remuer (1)* Don't your
 pulse grow weak? *pous m. s'affaiblir (2)* Does not his party gather strength? *parti m se renforcer (1)*
 Have we not behaved well towards him? *se comporter (1)* Had he not
 rebelled against us? *se révolter (1) contre* Have you not mistaken your way? *envers se méprendre (4 or) de chemin.*

Observe — 1st. That there are, in the French language, Verbs which are always used as Reflective, because the Conjunctive pronouns me, te, se; nous, vous, se, are inseparable from them; as s'Abstenir, to Abstain; s'Efforcer, to Endeavour; s'Ingérer, to Intermeddle; se Moquer, to Deride; se Repentir, to Repent; se Souvenir, to Remember; &c. — 2^dy. That the following Neuter verbs are made Reflective with the addition of the Particle en, viz. s'en aller, to Go away; s'en Retourner, to Return; s'Enfuir, to Run away; s'Endormir, to Fall asleep; s'Envoler, to Fly away; wherein en is not expressed in English. — 3^dy. That all Active verbs may be made occasionally Reflective, that is, when they are to express an action that terminates in the Person who acts; as s'Aimer, to Love one's self; se Punir, to Punish one's self; &c. Reciprocal Verbs admit of the same Construction; see the Practical Grammar, p. 99.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the foregoing Rules for the Construction of Verbs.

Nobody is screened against the aspersions of the wicked.

Personne être à l'abri calomnie f. méchant m.

Drunkenness heightens and discovers every fault one

ivrognerie f. augmenter (1) découvrir (2 ir) qu'on

has. Life and death, wealth and poverty, have a great

vie f. richesses pl. pauvreté f.

influence over all men. Do we not discover as much lit-

sur autant de

tleness of mind, when we exult on lucky, as when we

esprit m. se réjouir (2) quand

despond on unlucky occasions; and make ourselves as

s'affliger (1) malheureux m, se f. se rendre (4) aussi

ridiculous by gusts of merriment in prosperity, as by floods

ridicule c. exès m. joie dans torrent m.

of tears in adversity? Often-times the opulent shun and

larme très-souvent riche c. s'éviter (1)

hate one another, and the wretched seek after each

se haïr (2 ir) misérable c. se rechercher (1)

other. We ought never to be prepossessed against a

devoir (3) préjudicié m, e f.

man because he has a forbidden aspect, or a haughty

parceque déguant fier m, e f.

air, nor | on account of his being | born in a different

à cause qu'il est naître (4 ir)

country than ours; but suspend our opinion | of-him |

pays m. suspendre (4) à son égard

till we are acquainted with him personally: for can an

*jusqu'à ce que * connaître (4 ir) pouvoir (3 ir)*

honest man be distinguished from a rogue, or a friend

distingué m, e f. coquin m. ami m.

from an enemy, by the accidents of nature or place?

ennemi m. accident m. nature f.

* This Conjunctive Particle requires the verb in the Subjunctive mood.

56 THE CONSTRUCTION

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of the INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. **WHEN** two Verbs come together, the latter, if it has no Subject expressed or understood, whether the sign to is prefixed to it or not, is to be put in the Infinitive;

E X A M P L E :

Will you *learn* the mathematicks?
Vous-vous *aprendre les mathématiques?*

P R A X I S.

Is he gone to breakfast? Are * they to dance this
aller (1 ir) dîner (1) devoir (3) danser (1)
 evening? Are you to be of the party? Will you
soir m. partie f. vouloir (3 ir)
 introduce me? You seem to hesitate. Can't we go
introduire paraître (4 ir) pouvoir (3 ir)
 together? Don't you hear me speak? Be pleased to
entendre (4) daigner (1)
 grant me a favour. Can you lend me twenty guineas?
accorder (1) prêter (1) guinée f.
 I intend to return them to-morrow. Are you willing to
compter (1) rendre (4) demain vouloir (3 ir)
 do it? You should not spend your time in reading
faire (4 ir) devriez passer à lire
 Novels. What do you expect to learn | in them | ?
roman m. espérer (1) y

* When the Verb to Be is used before an Infinitive to denote a futurity in the action of the Verb following, it is rendered in French by the Verb *devoir*. Exam. He is to come, Il doit venir; or by the Future tense of the subsequent verb; as il viendra; &c. But, should it be used to denote a thing to be done instantly, it is construed by the impersonal *c'est à*; Exam. I am to drink, c'est à moi à boire; you are to play now, c'est à vous à jouer à présent; &c.

II. *The Particle to, generally used in English to denote this Mood, is most commonly rendered into French by à, de, or pour, for which take the following directions. . . If after any Tense of the Verb to Have (avoir) followed by a Substantive signifying a thing to be done, or an Adverbial particle expressing what one hopes or fears to do, the Particle to must be rendered by à;*

E X A M P L E:

Have you got some security to give me?
Avez-vous quelque caution à me donner?

P R A X I S.

I have no money to lend. He will have many difficulties to overcome, and you many hazards to run.
argent bien des
surmonter risque m. courir
 We have much to fear. Have you got nothing to do?
beaucoup rien

III. *When after any Tense of the verb Etre used personally, follows an Adjective of order, to is to be rendered by à;*

E X A M P L E:

He is one of the first to encourage it;
Il est un des premiers à l'encourager.

P R A X I S.

I am the first to blame his conduct, and you to praise it; and yet you know very well that he is always the first to contradict you, and to oppose our undertakings:
blamer conduite f. louer
cependant savoir (3 ir) toujours
contredire (4 ir) opposer entreprise f.

58 THE CONSTRUCTION

IV. *After Verbs that signify to learn, teach, exhort, aspire, think, love, expect, encourage, invite, and those that signify an application to something, to is rendered by à ;*

E X A M P L E :

She doth learn *to* dance and *to* sing ;
Elle apprend à dancier et à chanter.

P R A X I S.

Masters who use mildness towards their scholars
maître m. user (1) de clémence f. écolier m.
 encourage them more to learn than those who use
encourager (1) plus apprendre
 too much severity. Exhort him to do well. Aspire to
trop de exhorter (1) faire (4 ir) aspirer (1)
 be great. Invite your relation to dine with us to-day.
inviter (1) parent m. dîner

V. *After these, and the like Substantives, bent, disposition, unfitness, pain ;—also after these and the like Adjectives, inclined, fit, ready, easy, subject, dreadful ;—and lastly, after adverbial Particles, to is to be rendered by à ;*

E X A M P L E :

To have a great inclination *to* travel ;
Avoir un grand penchant à voyager.

P R A X I S.

A pupil who is inclined to learn, is always ready to
élève m. enclin m, e f. prêt m, e f.
 receive his master's instructions ; he is diligent to study
instruction f. étudier (1)
 his lessons, and careful to make a good use of his time.
leçon f. soigneux faire usage m. temps m.

VI. *After these Substantives*, time, means, will, kindness, power, authority, custom, leave, need, reason, mind, and the like; *also after these Adjectives*, glad, vexed, content, obliged, capable, certain, worthy, weary, greedy, and the like, the Particle *to* must be rendered by *de*;

E X A M P L E:

Have you a mind *to* come along with me?
Avez-vous envie de venir avec moi?

P R A X I S.

Whilst we have time to improve our knowledge, let us
pendant que *tems m.* *augmenter* *connoissances pl.*
do it. Kings have power to command, and judges the
pouvoir m. *commander* *juge m.*
authority to judge; we are obliged to obey them.
autorité f. *juger* *obligé m, e f.* *obéir*

VII. *After Verbs signifying to Advise, Pray, Desire, Presume, Pretend, Endeavour, Forbid, Promise, Determine, Boast, Grieve, Desist, Repent, and their contraries, the Particle to is to be rendered by de before an Infinitive*;

E X A M P L E:

I pray you to have a little patience;
Je vous prie d'avoir un peu de patience.

P R A X I S.

I advise you to learn that, promise me to do it. Never
conseiller (1) *apprendre* *promettre (4 ir)* *faire*
presume to have more sense than those who instruct you,
presumer (1) *d'esprit* *instruire (4 ir)*
or have the care of your conduct. Do not pretend to
soin m. *conduite f.* *prétendre (4)*
prosper in this world, without the fear of God.
prosperer *monde m.* *sans* *crainte f.*

VIII. *When we express the end, design or cause, for which a thing is done, if the Particle to can be resolved by in order to, it is generally expressed in French by pour ;*

E X A M P L E :

I went yesterday to your house to see you.
J'allai hier chez vous pour vous voir.

P R A X I S.

I come hither to tell you news. I have wrote to your
venir (2 ir) nouvelles pl. écrire (4 ir)
 guardian to know it, and I can assure you that he will
tuteur m. savoir (3 ir) pouvoir (3 ir) que
 do nothing to disoblige you; on the contrary, he will do
faire (4 ir) désobliger (1) au-contre
 his endeavours to deserve your confidence and affection.
effort m. mériter (1) confiance f. amitié f.

It may moreover be observed—1st. That those verbs which require à before them, can commonly be rendered into English by the Participle present with the prepositive particle in; as those, which require de, can be rendered by the same Participle with one of these prepositive particles of, from, or with: but if to can be resolved by for with the Participle present, it is, in that case, turned into French by pour.—
2dly. That if a Substantive, or Adjective is used with assez or trop, in a Phrase implying the end or cause of an action, the Particle to is to be rendered by pour; Exam. Il faut de l'argent, il n'en a pas assez pour l'acheter; et il est trop fier pour en emprunter; &c. but in other cases it takes sometimes de, Exam. N'étoit-ce pas assez de l'insulter, sans le battre; and sometimes no particle at all, Exam. C'est assez or c'est trop me punir; &c. Practice will teach the use of these Particles better than Rules which are liable to many exceptions.

Of the PARTICIPLES.

1. *IF either Articles or Possessive Pronouns are or can be used before the Participle present *, which terminates in ing, it ought to be rendered into French by a Substantive;*

EXAMPLE:

The rising of the sun. Shew me your writing.
Le lever du soleil. Montrez moi votre écriture.

P R A X I S.

The impoverishing of the body is the enriching of the
appauvrissement m. corps m. enrichissement m.
 soul. The frequent thinking | on the | things that concern
ame f. considération f. des concerner (1)
 our soul, contributes to the increasing of our happiness.
contribuer (1) augmentation f. bonheur m.
 Gaming and drinking are often the ruin of young
jeu m. boisson f. souvent ruine f.
 people. His undertaking is too bold. This drawing
gens pl. entreprise f. hardi m, e f. dessin m.
 is none of his doing. The learning of Languages is a
n'est pas façon f. étude f. langue f.
 very hard thing, especially to those who slight Rules.
difficile c. surtout dédaigner (1)
 Our setting off for London is fixed on Monday next.
départ m. fixé à prochain.

* This participle is seldom made use of in French, except *étant* and *ayant*, without being preceded by the Particle *en*; as, *en allant*, *en parlant*, &c. and, when it is used in this or in any other case, it never alters its termination; Exam. A woman fearing God, *une femme craignant Dieu*; &c. There are however some Participles, which are become Adjectives by use, that alter their termination according to the Gender and Number of their Substantives; such are *amusant m*, *amusante f*; *charmant m*, *charmante f*; &c.

62 THE CONSTRUCTION

II. *The Participle Present (ending in ing) coming after Verb, or one of these Particles for, from, of, with, without after, must be rendered into French by the Infinitive Present;*

E X A M P L E:

I see him coming. Without bringing it.
Je le vois venir. Sans l'apporter.

P R A X I S.

The providence of God keeps us from perishing, and his
providence f. empêcher (1) périr (2)
 grace hinders us from acting that which is bad. I am
grace f. garder (1) faire mauvais m. e. f.
 never tired of reading French books. How can you be
las m, se f. lire livre m. pouvoir (3)
 displeased with learning geography, and history?
dégoûté de géographie f. histoire f.

III. *If this Participle is preceded by in, it is also frequently resolved into French by the Infinitive Present, and is render'd by à; but this is not so certain a Rule as the last. If the Particle by is prefixed to it, you are to construe it in French, with the Participle Present in French as in English;*

E X A M P L E:

You spend too much time in reading Novels.
Vous passez trop de tems à lire des Romans.

P R A X I S.

The greatest wisdom of Man consists in knowing his
sagesse f. consister (1) connoître
 follies, and guarding against them. Masters improve them-
folie f. prévenir s'instruire (4)
 selves by teaching their Scholars, and they by studying.
enseigner (1) écolier m. aux étudier (1)

IV. *When after the auxiliary Verb to Be follows the Participle in ing, the Auxiliary ought not to be expressed in French, but the Participle must be rendered by the same Tense, Number, and Person of its own Verb, as the Auxiliary is in;*

E X A M P L E:

When he was speaking. We were looking.
Quand il parloit. Nous regardions.

P R A X I S.

Those that do not employ well their time in the begin-
employer (1) tems m. commen-
 ning of their lives, will be lamenting perpetually their
cement m. vie f. lamenter (1)
 folly. A diligent boy is always endeavouring to excel.
folie f. garçon m. tâcher (1) exceller (1)

V. *Participles of the Preterite are sometimes declined, that is to say, admit of a Gender and Number, and sometimes not: they are declined when used as Adjectives, whether they are preceded by any of the Tenses of the Verb Etre, or not;*

E X A M P L E:

The fleet destined for B—— is composed of &c.
La flotte destinée pour B—— est composée de &c.

P R A X I S.

In war time many places are taken and retaken by arms.
guerre f. tems m. place f. prendre (4 ir) arme f.
 Some towns given up and restored by treaties, and fa-
villes f. délivrer (1) rendre (4) traité m.
 milies ruined, although very few | are the better for it.
ruiner (1) quoique peu s'y enrichissent.

64 THE CONSTRUCTION

VI. *The Participle Præterite is not declined when the preceding Substantive or Pronoun is not its immediate object, but that of the verb which generally follows the Participle;*

EXAMPLE:

The rule which I have begun to explain.
La règle que j'ai commencé à expliquer.

P R A X I S.

The language which your friends have recommended
langue f. ami m. recommander (1)
 you to learn is very useful. The books which your
utile o. livre m.
 sister has order'd me to buy are instructive, and those
sœur m. ordonner (1) acheter (1) instructif m.
 which she has desired you to read are entertaining.
prier (1) lire (4 ir) amusant m, e f.

The Substantive règle is, in the example annexed to this last Rule, the immediate object of expliquer, and not of commencé, as may be proved by transposing the words thus; J'ai commencé à expliquer la règle; whereas in this example, l'histoire que je vous ai donnée à étudier, the object of the Participle donné is l'histoire, and ought, for this reason, to agree in Gender and Number with it; for one might say Je vous ai donné l'histoire à étudier; &c. But, when the Present of the Infinitive immediately follows this Participle annexed to any Tense of Avoir, that is, without being parted by a Prepositive particle, it remains invariable; therefore we say l'histoire que je vous ai vu étudier, and not vue. The Participle præterite agrees also with the conjunctive Pronouns, le, la, les, prefixed to the Auxiliary Avoir, when they may be construed as the immediate objects of it; Exam. Je l'ai vu, et je lui ai parlé (in speaking of a woman), je les ai vus, et je leur ai parlé (in speaking of men). The Participles été, fallu, pu, and voulu, are always invariable.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the Rules for the Construction of the Infinitive Mood.

Censure is a tax which a man must expect to pay to the
 public, if he strives to be eminent; it is a folly to think
 of escaping it. The desire of appearing generous often
 renders us lavish. The mind, by extending and repeating
 the effects of duration, without ever reaching the end,
 is acquiring the idea of eternity. Peter the first, after
 having civilized himself, had no great trouble to civil-
 ize his savages, but the difficulty laid in civilizing
 himself; for first, he was to acknowledge himself a
 barbarian, to confess it in the face of all Europe, and
 acquire the means of shaking off his barbarity; 2dly,
 he had to learn the difficult science of quitting a
 throne to sink to the low state of the most abject
 mechanick, and of laying aside a tottering crown
 without losing it. Charles XII. lost his time in con-
 quering, and Peter I. employed his in learning to govern.

66 THE CONSTRUCTION

CONSTRUCTION of the TENSES of the INDICATIVE.

I. **THE** Present Tense is used in French as in English, to express the doing of an action at a time present;

EXAMPLE:

You give yourself too much trouble;
Vous vous donnez trop de peine.

P R A X I S.

Evil ^{compagnie f.} companions corrupt ^{corrompre (4 ir)} good ^{mœurs f.} manners. Wicked ^{méchants m.} men think that those who do no harm have no wit. Learning ^{s'imaginer (1)} supports conversation, and candour ^{faire (4 ir) mal m.} preserves its freedom, ^{esprit m.} ^{savoir} ^{liberté f.}

II. The Imperfect is used in French, to express the Continuation of an action past and interrupted by another;

EXAMPLE:

I was writing, when you arrived;
J'écrivois, quand vous arrivâtes.

P R A X I S.

We were speaking of you when you came in. What was you saying of me? What did Mr. R— say? He said that when you was young you loved hunting.

III. The Imperfect is also used in French, when we speak of the age, of living Persons, and of the inclinations and qualities of dead Creatures, either rational or irrational;

E X A M P L E:

George III. was 22 years old at his accession;
George III. avoit 22 ans à son avènement.

P R A X I S.

Charles XII. was the Alexander of the North. Richelieu
breathed haughtiness and vengeance. Mazarine was
pliant, but sought to enrich himself, by indirect means.
respirer (1) hauteur f. vengeance f.
fauple c. chercher (1) s'enrichir (2) moyen m.

IV. The Preterite is used to denote an action perfectly past, and is often determined by a Particle of the time past;

E X A M P L E:

I saw the King and Queen yesterday;
Je vis hier le Roi et la Reine.

P R A X I S.

After the emperor Julius Cæsar had conquered England,
après que Jules Cæsar conquerr (2 ir)
he built the tower of London; he continued not in Lon-
bâti (2) tour f. rester (1) à
don, but appointed rulers in his stead, and retired.
établir (2) gouverneur m. place f. se retirer (1)
Edward III. took Calais | on the | 3d of August, 1347.
Edouard prendre (4 ir) le Août

68 THE CONSTRUCTION

V. *The Future Tense denotes a time not yet come, and, generally speaking, admits of a literal construction in French;*

EXAMPLE:

We shall soon see what he *will do*;
Nous verrons bien-tôt ce qu'il fera.

P R A X I S.

I shall go to-morrow | into the | country. You will
aller (1 ir) en campagne
 forget all your French. Not at all, for I shall not stay
oublier (1) François m. point du tout rester (1)
 a long while. Will you not carry books with you?
tenir m. porter (1) livre m.
 I am in hopes | that you shall not go thither this week,
espérer (1) aller (1 ir) y

It must be observed—1st. That when the Future Tense is used in English, conjointly with the Present Tense negatively, the French verb must be in the Present of the Subjunctive with que before it; Exam. I don't believe he will go thither, je ne crois pas qu'il y aille; &c.—2dly. That this Tense is used in French, tho' the English use the Present Tense with several conjunctive Particles, such as when, as, so long as, after, &c. Exam. When you have done this Exercise, you may go and play, quand vous aurez fait, vous pouvez aller jouer; all these Particles will be taken notice of hereafter in their respective place—3dly. That, on the contrary we use sometimes, in familiar discourse, the Present Tense instead of the Future, tho' joined to some words denoting Futurity; Exam. I shall be with you in a moment, je suis à vous dans un moment; &c.

CONSTRUCTION of the TENSES of the
SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *THE* Present Tense of the Subjunctive Mood is to be used in French with the second verb, when the first is employed interrogatively or negatively; but, in either case, the first must always be followed by the Particle *que* *; we use it also after the Pronoun *qui*, preceded by a Superlative;

E X A M P L E S:

1. Do you believe he *can* prove it?
Croyez-vous qu'il puisse le prouver?
2. I do not say that he *is* a liar;
Je ne dis pas qu'il soit menteur.

P R A X I S.

Do you think that Mr. B—— is in the wrong? I cannot
croire (4 ir) avoir (3 ir) tort pouvoir (3 ir)
 declare that I have heard it. The best thing he can do
déclarer oui dire chose f.
 is to conceal *himself* for two or three weeks. The
c'est de se cacher pendant ou semaine f.
 emperor *Antoninus's* conduct was admirable, and he is
empereur m. conduite f.
 rank'd among the | greatest princes that have ever reigned.
du nombre des prince m. jamais régner (1)

* This Tense is moreover used—1st. after most Impersonals followed by either *que* or *qui*, and such Conjunctive Particles as are mention'd in p. 49, R. IV.—2dly. in sentences that imply a surprise, a wish, or an imprecation.

II. *The Imperfect of the Subjunctive denotes a thing that would, should or could be, at the present time, supposing certain conditions; and it is used in French as in English, except after the Particle if (si *), in which case it ought to be rendered into French by the imperfect of the Indicative;*

E X A M P L E:

We should be happy if you *would* come;
Nous serions heureux si vous veniez.

P R A X I S.

If you would take pains, your friends would love you.

prendre (4 ir) ami m. aimer (1)
 If he should find him at home, what could he say to

trouver (1) au logis dire (4 ir)
 him? If she would apply herself. I asked him whether

s'appliquer (1) demander (1) si
 he would come, and I assured him that we should re-

venir (2 ir) assurer (1) que
 ceive him kindly, if he would give us that satisfaction.

recevoir (3) gracieusement donner (1) satisfaction f.

III. *This Preterite has a mixed signification; for it alludes sometimes to a time past, and sometimes to a time to come; in the latter sense it is, or may be, Englished by would or should; and when it serves to denote a time or action past, it is in the Preterite of the Indicative; but in both cases the Particle que, or some Conjunctive Particle ending in que must always precede the said Tense in French;*

* But when the Particle *si* stands for *whether*, then this Tense is used in French as well as in English. Exam. I know not whether you could have patience to do it. — *Je ne sais si vous auriez la patience de le faire; &c.*

OF VERBS.

75

EXAMPLES:

1. It was to the end you *should employ him*;
C'étoit afin que vous l'employassiez.
2. He told it me before he *was taken*;
Il me le dit avant qu'il fût pris.

P R A X I S.

I have always loved you before you came so idle. Al-
though queen Elizabeth loved the earl of Essex, she
suffered that he should be put to death. Caligula ordered
that the Romans should pay him divine honours.

toujours *avant que devenir (2 ir)*
comte m.
permettre (4 ir) *ordonner (1)*
Romains *rendre (4)* *bonneur m.*

IV. *These auxiliaries may, should, would, could, and might, are not always signs of the Subjunctive Mood, nor will of the Future, for they must be rendered by a distinct verb, when they have an Emphasis laid on them;*

EXAMPLE:

If I *would* go out, he *could* not hinder me;
Si je voulois sortir, il ne pourroit m'en empêcher.

P R A X I S.

Scholars may play when their masters have given them
leave; but they should never prefer pleasure to study.
Would you be happy? shun vice, and practice virtue.

écolier m. *jouer (1)* *maître m.*
permission f. *devoir (3)* *préférer (1)* *étude f.*
vouloir (3 ir) *éviter (1)* *pratiquer (1)*

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of the IMPERATIVE MOOD.

I. **THIS** Mood, which admits of no Tense either in English or French, is used to command, intreat, give consent, or forbid; and because one does not direct any of these actions to himself, it wants the first Person in the singular number;

E X A M P L E:

*Fear God and honour your parents;
Craignez Dieu et honorez vous parents.*

P R A X I S.

Go | from me | to Mrs. G—'s * give her this letter, and
de ma part chez lettre f.
 bring me an answer. Do not be mistaken, and make
réponse f. se méprendre (4 ir)
 haste to come back. Let us finish our work. Let him
se dépêcher (1) revenir finir (2) ouvrage m.
 speak if he requires it. Let her go out now. Let us
exiger (1) sortir (2 ir) se
 walk into the garden. Let them come in. Employ
promener (1) dans jardin m. entrer (1) employer (1)
 the first years of your life with the Dead, the second
année f. vie f. avec mort m.
 with the Living, and the last with yourself. Mind me,
vivant m. dernier m, e f. croire (4 ir)
 forget all that's past, and let us now live good friends.
oublier (1) ce qui vivre (4 ir)

* This s is no more to be taken notice of in French, than the words *house* or *home*; should either of them be annexed to this or any other proper name, which is often the case in expressions of this kind: see p. 92, R. VII,

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE,

On the Rules for the Construction of the four Moods.

A good subject ought to love and respect his king.
sujet m. devoir (3) aimer respecter roi m.
 The generality of men employ the first part of life in
plupart f. employer (1) partie f. à
 making the other miserable. The Romans kept always
rendre (4) misérable c. Romain m. entretenir (2 ir)
 the sacred fire in the temple of *Vesta*; for they looked upon
feu m. temple m. car regarder (1)
 its extinction as an omen of a public disaster. Alexander
présage m. désastre m. Alexandre
 does not appear so glorious for having conquered the
paraître (4 ir) conquérir (2 ir)
 Indians, as for having refrained from forcing *Darius's*
Indiens m. que se retenir (2 ir) forcer (1)
 fair daughters, who were his captives. One of the
captive f.
 greatest advantages we can gather from virtue is that
avantage m. tirer (1)
 of making our mind invincible against the attacks of
rendre (4) esprit m. contre attaque f.
 fortune. When Zeno was told * that all his goods were
fortune f. Zénon dire (4 ir) bien m.
 lost, well then, said he, Fortune has a mind to make
bé bien dire (4 ir) envie rendre
 me a philosopher. Good people suffer many incon-
philosophe gens f, pl. incon-
 veniencies in this world; let not misfortune deject
venient m. malheur m. chagriner (1)
 you. Do not covet wealth, but endeavour to get esteem.
richesses pl. tâcher (1) de acquérir (2 ir)

* This verb is to be used in the active voice, with the Particle *on* for its subject, thus; *quand on eut dit à Zénon*, see the Construction of *on*, p. 113.

RULES for the GOVERNMENT of VERBS.

By the word *Government* is meant the *State* of the Substantive or Pronoun such a verb requires after it, which is expressed in French by either an Article or Particle; and if it is an Article, it must always agree in Gender and Number with the Substantive governed; whence, that Substantive or Pronoun is, properly speaking, the *Object* of the governing Verb, which expression corresponds with that, which is called, by those who have endeavoured to model the Rudiments of the French tongue, on those of the Latin language, the *Case* of the Verb. Observe, that here no notice is taken of those Verbs that have the same Government in both languages.

I. *WHEN* after the Auxiliary verb Avoir a Substantive follows without an Article, that Substantive must be used in the second State, that is, with *du, de la, &c.*

E X A M P L E:

I have scholars that have wit;
J'ai des écoliers qui ont de l'esprit.

P R A X I S.

A man that has wit and no * conduct is despicable. I
homme m. esprit m. conduite méprisable c.
 prefer a poor, ignorant, and pious man, to him that hath
pauvre c. pieu x m, se f.
 learning and no religion. Those that have riches, and
savoir m. qui richesses pl.
 no charity for the poor, are certainly worse than beasts.
charité pauvre c. que

* This negative particle, before a Substantive, is rendered by *point de*.

II. *The Auxiliary Verb Etre, when it implies Possession or Duty, and other Verbs used impersonally, require the third State after them; that is, à before the Pronoun, or au m, à la f, sing. &c. prefixed to the Substantive they govern;*

E X A M P L E:

It is your duty to reprimand him;
C'est à vous à le réprimander.

P R A X I S.

It is the duty | of kings to defend their subjects and
c'est *roi m.* *à défendre* *sujet m.*
 the duty | of the subjects to serve their king. Give
c'est *à servir* *leur*
 unto Cæsar that which is Cæsar's, and to God that
à *César* *ce* *qui* *Dieu*
 which is God's. It concerns parents and masters to exhort
importe *parent m.* *d'exhorter*
 children to virtue, and it becomes children to practice it.
vertu f. *convient* *de pratiquer*

III. *Verbs active* require the Substantive or Pronoun which is their object in the first state; but if they are attended by two Substantives or Pronouns, that which expresses the end of the action is to be placed in the third State;*

E X A M P L E:

To teach somebody something;
Enseigner quelque chose à quelqu'un.

* Verbs used passively require *de* or *par*, used in the same sense as the words *of*, *from*, or *by* are; but if they are followed by *with*, they require *de*. Exam. He is esteemed by them, *il est estimé d'eux*; he was attended with two servants, *il étoit accompagné de deux domestiques*; &c.

P R A X I S.

Mr. D— has given your brother a watch, and I will
donner (1) frère m. montre f.
 send him a ring. Present this book to your sister, and
envoyer (1) bague f. présenter (1) livre m. sœur f.
 deliver or send this note to her father. I have taught two
délivrer (1) billet m. père m. enseigner (1)
 of your relations French, Italian, Geography, and History.
parent m. géographie f. histoire f.

IV. *The Substantive * or Pronoun that is the object of any of these Verbs, Mourir (to Die) Languir (to Languish) Blamer (to Blame) Avoir pitié (to Pity) must be used in the second State, that is, with du m, de la f, &c. or the Particle de;*

E X A M P L E.

Many die in Turkey with the plague;
Plusieurs meurent de la peste en Turquie.

P R A X I S.

Every one blames you for your negligence, and your
chacun m. négligence f.
 ignorance. I have no pity on the misery of those,
ignorance f. misère f.
 who being young and strong choose rather to beg from
jeune c. fort m. aimer (1) mendier (1) de
 door to door than to work; but I pity the blind.
porte en de mais aveugle c.
 My brother died of a fever which he caught in America.
frère m. fièvre f. attraper (1) Amérique

* This Rule relates to such Substantives, as have an Article prefixed to them in English; for, if they are preceded by a Prepositive particle only, *de* is to be used instead of the second State, as in this Example, *More people die with Excess, than thro' Want; Plus de gens meurent d'excès, &c.*

V. *The same State or Article du, de la, &c. or de, is to be prefixed to the Object of the following Reflective Verbs, se Souvenir, se Réjouir, se Repentir, se Moquer, se Venger;*

EXAMPLE:

Do you remember the promise which — &c.

Vous souvenez-vous de la promesse que — &c.

P R A X I S.

I rejoice at the good success you have had in your business.

se réjouir (2) succès m. dans affaires pl.

Do you remember the sum of money I lent you a year ago.

se souvenir (2 ir) somme f. prêter (1) il y a

A fool laughs at every thing. *Pirrhus*, to revenge the

se moquer (1) tout m, e f. se venger (1)

death of his father *Achilles*, killed *Priamus* and *Polites*.

mort f. Achille tuer (1) Priame Polite.

VI. *The Substantive or Pronoun that is the Object of any of these Verbs, Nuire, Plaire, Rendre, Donner, Accorder, Convenir, is preceded by the Particle à before a Pronoun; or the Article au m, à la, f, &c. before a Substantive, or Adjective;*

EXAMPLE:

We should endeavour to please God;

Nous devrions tâcher de plaire à Dieu.

P R A X I S.

An honest man does not seek to hurt | any body |

bonnête c. chercher (1) nuire (4 ir) personne f.

Musick pleases my sister vastly. Play does not suit every

musique f. plaire (4 ir) beaucoup convenir (2 ir)

age. Learning gives old people much comfort. Have

donner (1) gens f. beaucoup de

you returned your brother, what he had lent you.

rendre (4) frère f. prêter (1)

VII. *The following Verbs, Obéir, (to Obey) Devoir (to Owe) Promettre (to Promise) Payer (to Pay) Commander (to Command) Persuader (to Persuade) Renoncer (to Renounce) Résister (to Resist) require their Object in the third State, that is, au m, à la f, &c: before a Substantive, and à before a possessive, but not a Conjunctive, Pronoun* ; the following Verbs govern also the same State ; viz.*

<i>Aboutir,</i>	<i>Penser,</i>	<i>s' Amuser.</i>
<i>Aplaudir,</i>	<i>Pourvoir,</i>	<i>s' Attacher.</i>
<i>Compair,</i>	<i>Prétendre,</i>	<i>s' Attendre.</i>
<i>Contrevenir,</i>	<i>Ressembler,</i>	<i>s' Exposer.</i>
<i>Insulter,</i>	<i>Survivre,</i>	<i>se Fier.</i>
<i>Obvier,</i>	<i>Tendre,</i>	<i>s' Occuper.</i>
<i>Pardonner,</i>	<i>Viser,</i>	<i>se Soumettre.</i>

E X A M P L E :

Abraham obeyed the Lord's voice ;
Abraham obéit à la voix du Seigneur.

P R A X I S.

We ought to obey not only our parents, but also our
devoir (1) obéir (2) seulement aussi
 superiors. I owe your uncle some money, but I have
supérieur m. devoir (2) oncle m. argent m.
 promised my friend M. F— to pay him what he lent me.
promettre (4 ir) payer (1) prêter (1)
 I applaud the proposal, but cannot give up my right.
applaudir (2) proposition f. renoncer (1) droit m.
 Can't you persuade your guardian to send you to school ?
persuader (1) tuteur m. école f.

* The Conjunctive Pronouns corresponding with the third State, may be found at p. 26, in the 1st. 3d. 4th. and 6th. Observation ; but they do not admit, in this case, of the Particle *à* in French, as Possessive and Demonstrative Pronouns do, even when they have another Particle after them ;
 EXAM. I forgive him, *je lui pardonne*, not *je pardonne à lui* ; &c.

VIII. *The Verb Jouer (to Play) has two different Governments; viz. du, de la, &c. and au, à la, &c. When we speak of musical instruments, it is englished by to play on or upon, and it requires the first; but if it signifies Gaming, it is expressed in English by to play at, and the latter, viz. au, à la, &c. is to be used in French before its Object;*

E X A M P L E:

He plays on the fiddle, and she plays at cards.

Il joue du violon, et elle joue aux cartes.

P R A X I S.

I do not like to play at games of chance, as at dice, &c.

aimer (1) jeu m. Lazard m. dez m.

but I like to play sometimes at bowls, at tennis, or at

quelquesfois boule f. jeu de paume m.

nine-pins. Can you play on any instrument? I play

quilles pl. savoir (3 ir) quelque c.

on the flute, on the base-viol, and on the harpsichord.

flûte f. basse de viole f. clavecin m.

From the foregoing Rules, it appears that you are not to use the same State in French after two Verbs, tho' joined together in the same Sentence by the Particle *et*, that differ in their government, as is frequently the case in English; as for instance, mind the following Example, which relates to the third Rule of this Section; I love and am loved by the Master; which might be translated in French thus; *j'aime le maître et je suis aimé du maître*: but to avoid the repetition of *maître*, it is better to say and write *j'aime le maître et j'en suis aimé*. This observation is likewise applicable to all the Rules on the Government of Verbs, which, tho' liable to some exceptions, as all general Rules are, may be depended upon by such Learners as have not the assistance of a skilled Teacher.

80 THE CONSTRUCTION

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the foregoing Rules for the Government of Verbs.

A man who has riches, power and generosity can
homme m. richesses pl. pouvoir m. générosité f.
 make others happy. We ought never to rejoice at others
rendre (4) heureux m. devoir (3) je réjouir (2)
 misfortunes, nor deride the poverty of any body. If you
malheur m. se moquer (1) personne f.
 are insulted, consider that it becomes a noble soul not to
insulter (1) convenir (2 ir) ame f.
 revenge an injury, but to forgive the aggressor, and
se venger (1) injure f. pardonner (1)
 even pity him. Charitable men think of the needy,
même charitable c.
 and delight to relieve them. To oppose the Magistrates
se plaire (4 ir) s'opposer (1)
 is to hurt society. Nothing displeases an honest man | so
c'est société f. déplaire (4 ir) tant
 much as | to hear a person slander another. Who is so
quo de médire (4 ir) si
 happy as to please all, and be envied of none? *Ulysses*,
que de envier (1) personne
 crossing the sea of Sicily, commanded his sailors to stop
traverser (1) Sicile matelot m. se bou-
 their ears with wax, and | caused himself to be tied | on
cher (1) de se fit attacher au
 the mast of his ship, to resist the charms of the Syrens.
mât vaisseau m. charme m. Sirène f.
 The Athenians were displeased with their *Simonides*, be-
Athéniens mécontent m. par-
 cause he talked too loud. The Thebans accused *Pan-*
ceque trop Thébains Pan-
niculus for spitting too much: the Carthaginians spake ill
nicule cracher (1) Carthaginiens parler (1)
 of *Hannibal*, because he went open-breasted; and others
parceque déboutonné
 laughed at Julius Cæsar, because he was ill girt.
Jules César ceint.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of the
IMPERSONAL VERBS *It is, There is, and Must.*

THE Verb *to Be*, used impersonally, may be rendered variously, viz. by *il est, c'est, il fait*, and *il faut*; but as they cannot be indifferently used for one another, the Learner is to observe the following Directions; viz.

I. *The Impersonal it is, it was, &c. must be rendered into French by c'est, c'étoit, &c. before a Substantive, either single or joined with an Adjective; also before Articles, Pronouns, Infinitives and Adverbial Particles.—But before these two Substantives, temps time, heure hour or clock, used without an Article, and Adjectives alone, the same Verb must be rendered into French by il est, il étoit, il fut, &c.**

E X A M P L E :

It is a good discourse. Is it true that you — &c.
C'est un bon discours. Est-il vrai que vous — &c.

P R A X I S.

It is very lamentable to see men of excellent parts
triste c. voir (3 ir) d'esprit m.
prone to vice. It is a great satisfaction to parents to have
enclin m. vice m. grand m, e f. parent m.
dutiful children; it is fit to correct them, when they are
nécessant m. bon corriger (1) quand
idle and stubborn: it is love and reason that prescribe it.
entêté m. amour m. raison f. ordonner (1)
It is late, and it is time to get up; for it is seven o'clock.
tard se lever heure

* We sometimes say, in familiar conversation, *c'est vrai*, that is true; *c'est impossible*, that is impossible; *c'est honteux*, that is shameful; &c. but in these and the like expressions, *est* is not used as an impersonal verb, because it relates to something spoken of before, and is a contraction of *cela*.

82 THE CONSTRUCTION

II. *This Impersonal Verb is rendered by il fait, il fesoit, &c. when we speak of the weather and its dispositions, and before these Substantives, jour, nuit, soleil, vent, as also before the Adjectives, good, bad, if they are followed by a name of a place; but by il vaut, &c. before mieux (better);*

E X A M P L E:

*It is the finest weather in the world ;
Il fait le plus beau tems du monde.*

P R A X I S.

Is it hotter in France than here? It is warmer there in summer, but colder in winter. What weather is it? It is dirty, and it was windy this morning. It is good being here. It is better to be alone, than with bad company.

*chaud en que il y chaud
été m. froid hiver m. tems m.
croûté vent matin m.
seul m, &c. en compagnie*

III. *After the same impersonal verb, this expression one's self is to be rendered by the Pronoun se, and the Participle present, following it, is to be placed in the Present Infinitive*

E X A M P L E:

*It is deceiving one's self, to rely on Futurity ;
C'est se tromper, que de compter sur l'Avenir *.*

P R A X I S.

It is making one's self ridiculous. It was exposing one's self too much. Is it forgetting one's self greatly? Is not behaving one's self as a child, to act as you do?

*rendre ridicule c. exposer
trop oublier beaucoup
comporter en d'agir*

* It is an idiom of the French Language to make use of *que de* in expressions of this sort, that is, when the Participle of a verb, either reflexive or not, immediately follows any tense of the impersonal *Etre*, and that another verb, in the Infinitive, happens to begin the second part of the Sentence

IV. *The Impersonal it is, &c. followed by the Particle with, is to be rendered into French by il en est, &c. and the Article du, de la, des, according to the Gender and Number of the subsequent Substantive; or with de before a Pronoun;*

E X A M P L E:

It is *with* poetry as it is *with* painting;
Il en est de la poésie comme de la peinture.

P R A X I S.

It is with the diseases of the heart as with those of the
maladie f. cœur m.
 body; some are real, and others imaginary. It will be with
corps m. réel m, le f. imaginaire c.
 you as it was with your predecessor. In Spain, France,
prédécesseur m. Espagne
 and Portugal, it is with politics as with religion; for
affaires d'état pl.
 no one | is to interfere with them | but their ministers.
personne ne doit s'en mêler (1) que ministre m.

V. *The Impersonal Verb there is, there was, &c. tho' used in English in both Numbers, as there are, there were, &c. is always to be rendered into French by the Singular*;*

E X A M P L E:

There are four Universities in Scotland;
Il y a quatre Universités en Ecosse.

* We have a peculiar way of rendering this verb in French, when the adverbial Particle *no* follows it before a Participle; which no rule but practice can inform the learner of; Exam. There is no going out to-night, because it rains too much; *On ne peut or on ne sauroit sortir ce soir, parcequ'il pleut trop.*

84 THE CONSTRUCTION

P R A X I S.

Among friends there are frailties to be indulged. There
parmi ami m. faible m. qu'il faut excuser.
 is no real happiness in this world. There are occasions
vrai m, e f. monde m. rencontre f.
 in life wherein silence and simplicity are to be preferred to
vie f. où simplicité f. préférer (1)
 discourse and ostentation. There is pleasure in living with
discours m. plaisir m. à vivre
 rational people ; but there are people of a different taste.
raisonnable c. mais gens pl. goût m.

VI. *The Defective Verb Must, which is used in English through all the persons of the Present Tense, is, if rendered by Faloir, an impersonal verb in French; its construction is either with que and the Subjunctive, or with the Infinitive alone; but when the Subject of the Verb is expressed before the Subjunctive, the former is to be preferred to the latter;*

E X A M P L E S:

1. You must do that immediately ;
Il faut que vous fassiez cela sur le champ.
2. That must be done immediately ;
Il faut faire cela sur le champ.

P R A X I S.

I must go this instant to see my uncle, who is at S. and
aller (1) voir (3 ir)
 you must come with me. We must not then stay long
venir (2 ir) donc long tems
 for I must be at W. this evening. It is not enough to think
à suffire (4 ir) de penser (1)
 with exactness, one must besides | express one's self | clearly.
justesse f. il de plus s'exprimer (1)

On the foregoing, Rules for the Construction of the Impersonal Verbs, It is, There is, and Must.

H

86 THE CONSTRUCTION

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of ADVERBIAL PARTICLES.

I. **ADVERBIAL** Particles, except when they are used at the beginning of a Sentence, must be placed after the Verb; but in a Compound-tense, that is, when a Participle of the Preterite is joined to any of the Auxiliary Verbs, they are generally placed * between the Auxiliary and the Participle;

E X A M P L E:

He *always* laughs. She has danced *well*;
Il rit toujours. Elle a bien dansé.

P R A X I S.

I commonly dine at one o'clock. I very seldom go out
ordinairement *heure f.* *sortir (2 ir)*
on Sundays. Your relation always promises, but never
les *parent m.* *promettre (4 ir)*
keeps his word; he has frequently disappointed me
tenir (2 ir) *parole f.* *tromper (1)*

II. Particles serving to denote some Quantity, being before a Substantive, must have *de* (of) annexed to them, such as;

<i>Assés,</i>	<i>Guères,</i>	<i>Peu,</i>
<i>Autant,</i>	<i>Plus,</i>	<i>Tant,</i>
<i>Beaucoup,</i>	<i>Moins,</i>	<i>Trop.</i>

E X A M P L E:

He has very little wit, but much pride;
Il a très peu d'esprit, mais beaucoup d'orgueil.

* If it is a compound Particle in French, it must be placed after the Participle; Exam. He has accused him wrongfully, *Il l'a accusé à-tort*; &c. but the Particle *assez* may be placed either before or after the Participle pre-

P R A X I S.

I read more books in a week than you in a month.
lire (4 ir) dans semaine f. mois m.
 How much time have you not lost? You have now
temps m. perdre (4) à présent
 money enough to pay all your debts. You have less credit
pour dette f. intérêt
 than I, and yet more wealth, but not so much œconomy.
richesses pl. pas économie.

III. *When the Particle bien is used to denote Manner or Quality, it signifies well, and is subject to the 1st Rule; but if it serves to indicate Quantity, that is, when it implies much, many, &c. it requires du m, de la f, des c, after it;*

E X A M P L E:

Much time; many people;
Bien du temps; bien des gens.

P R A X I S.

There is much pleasure in teaching diligent boys; but
plaisir m. à enseigner garçon m.
 much trouble in instructing, and in ruling idle and
peine f. instruire gouverneur
 wicked boys. There are many rascals who | study nothing
malicieux m. coquin m. ne s'appliquent
 but mischief |. I have experienced many difficulties,
et à la malice essayer (1) difficulté f.
 have gone through | a good deal | of vexation, and
souffrir (2 ir) bien cbagrin m.
 spent much time with many scholars, to no purpose.
employer (1) temps m. écolier m. sans effet.

You are to observe—That the Adverbial particles où where, où from whence, are always put before the Verb; and those of Order, such as premièrement, enfin, ensuite, and the like, are as often placed before as they are after verbs; for their arrangement depends entirely on the style of the Discourse.

88 THE CONSTRUCTION

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of PREPOSITIVE PARTICLES.

- I. *PREPOSITIVE* Particles, with respect to their construction, are generally used in French as in English.

E X A M P L E:

Noah did live *before* and *after* the flood;
Noé a vécu avant et après le déluge.

P R A X I S.

God has done all things for his own glory. Good education teaches | how to behave | towards every body.
Dieu faire (4 ir) propre c.
What difference there is between the good and the wicked.
à se bien comporter tout le monde
these are as much esteemed, as the others are despised.
il y a bons m, pl. mépriser (1)
ceux-ci estimer (1)

- II. *The following Particles being before a Substantive require the Article du, m. de la, f. or des, pl. and the Particle de before Pronouns or proper names, annexed to them; viz.*

<i>Près*,</i>	<i>Autour,</i>	<i>Au-travers,</i>
<i>Proche,</i>	<i>Au-dessous,</i>	<i>Hors,</i>
<i>Le long,</i>	<i>Au-dessus,</i>	<i>Vis-à-vis,</i>
<i>A l'égard,</i>	<i>Au-rebours,</i>	<i>A l'opposite,</i>

* Altho' this particle requires the article, as specified in the Rule, yet we may say in common conversation *près l'église St. Pierre*, near St. Peter's Church; *proche* and *vis-à-vis le lion rouge*, over against the red lion, &c.

E X A M P L E :

That is too *near the fire*;
Cela est trop près du feu.

P R A X I S.

We are not yet near the town; walk along the river.
encore vill. f. marcher (1) rivière f.
 Does not Mr. Smyth live near to Mr. Crauley's warehouse,
demeurer (1) magasin m.
 over against the red lion? I believe my shortest way to
rouge c.
 Chelsea-college, is to go thro' St. James's park.
college m. passer (1) Jaques parc m.

III. *These Prepositive Particles, jusque (till, until, or even to) quant (as for) being set before a Substantive, require the Article au, à la, or aux after them; and à before a Pronoun;*

E X A M P L E :

He extended his generosity *even to the strangers*;
Il étendit sa générosité jusqu'aux étrangers.

P R A X I S.

A labourer that works | from morning till night, lives
laboureur m. travailler (1) depuis soir m. vivre (4 ir)
 more content, if he is well paid, than those that have
payer (1) qui
 great riches. They that will persevere in the fear
richesses f. pl. persévérer (1) crainte f.
 of God, even to death, shall enjoy the glory | of hea-
mort f. jouir (2) de gloire f. cé-
 ven; | be then good even to the last moment of your life.
last c. donc moment m. vie f.

IV. *The Particle in signifies en or dans, but they are not to be used indiscriminately; for the former is generally used when the Substantive is not preceded by an Article; the latter on the contrary, when it is followed by an Article*;*

E X A M P L E:

In town. In Oxfordshire. In the house.
En ville. Dans le comté d'Oxford. Dans la maison.

P R A X I S.

They make fine china in *Worcestershire*. Mr. D—
on fait porcelaine f. comté m.
 turned yesterday in Mr. F—'s coach. I have in my
venir (2 lit) carrosse m.
 closet an account of | whatever is | curious in *France*,
cabinet m. description f. ce qu'il y a de
 and in *Italy*. Have you not bought in Ireland the watch
Italie acheteur (1) Irlande montret
 you have in your pocket? No, I bought it in *Scotland*.
pocket f. Ecoffe.

V. *The Prepositive particles at, to, in, denoting the habitation, house, or home of persons, are to be rendered by chez † with such a Conjunctive pronoun annexed to it, as the sense requires, if no surname is mentioned; otherwise the surname is to follow the foresaid particle, and in either case the word house or home is not to be expressed in French;*

* The particle *dans* is also used when any mention is made of any thing read or contained in Authors, tho' no Article follows; Exam. I have read in Virgil, Horace, Ovid, &c. *J'ai lu dans Virgile, Horace, Ovide, &c.*

† The Particle *chez*, is preceded by *de*, when the sense of the Phrase implies coming from; Ex m. *Il vient de chez lui*; he comes from home, &c. It is frequently used in French for *among* and *with*; Exam. There was a law among the Athenians, &c. *il y avait une loi chez les Athéniens*, &c. It may also be observed that the word *house* or *home*, is rendered by *chez* when either of them is used with a pronoun relating to the third Person.

EXAMPLE:

Send this *to* Mr. Brent's *house*;
Envoyez ceci chez Monsieur Brent.

P R A X I S.

I am going to Mr. Daniel's house; is he at home? I
aller (1 ir)
 don't know, for I come from Mrs. Mapletost's. Have you
savoir (3 ir) venir (2 ir)
 called at Mr. Smyth's this morning? I have heard that
été matin m. apprendre (4 ir)
 Mr. Tireman won't permit you to stay longer at his
permettre de
 house. Is it true? If it is so, you may come to my
vrai
 house. Is not | every body | master in his own house?

The French language admits also of the Prepositive particles, à, de, en, and pour, in many Phrases wherein English particles of a different import are used; and even in some modes of speech which contain no Particles; the following Examples will serve to elucidate this observation:

Un habit à la mode,	<i>A coat in the fashion.</i>
Trop long de six pouces,	<i>Too long by six inches.</i>
Il est en repos,	<i>He is at rest.</i>
Elle crie à l'aide,	<i>She cries for help.</i>
Un pays à bled,	<i>A corn country.</i>
Rien de mauvais,	<i>Nothing bad.</i>

But, as it would take too much room to point out such idiomatical expressions, these few examples will suffice to give the diligent Learner a general idea of the signification of these Particles, without puzzling him with any more Rules on this intricate Part of Speech.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLES.

- I. *MOST Conjunctive Particles are used, with respect to their Construction, in French as in English;*

E X A M P L E:

Obey me, *otherwise* you shall be punished;
Obéissez moi, autrement vous serez puni.

P R A X I S.

Speak little and think well, if you would be | looked
parler (1) penser (1) vouloir (3 ir) considé-
on | as a man of sense. Consider for what purpose you
ser (4) esprit m. fin m.
are sent to school, therefore don't neglect your studies;
envoyer (1) c'est pourquoi négliger (1)
besides, you know how shameful and even hurtful it is to
d'ailleurs savoir (3 ir) combien nuisible c.
be ignorant. Mr. Batman lives as if he was never to die.
ignorant m, e. f. vivre (4 ir) mourir (2 ir)

- II. *If the following Particles are between two Substantives, the last must have the same Article, Adjective, or Particle prefixed to it as the first *; if between two Verbs, they must be of the same Mood, Tense, and Person; viz.*

And, *et.* Also, *aussi.* Or, *ou.* Nor, *ni.*

* This is to be understood of such phrases wherein the Articles, Adjectives, and Particles, denote a division of the sense in the discourse, or a difference of Gender and Number in the Substantive, otherwise they are seldom repeated; Exam. Great and vast projects, together with a speedy and wise expedition, &c. *de grands projets joints à une prompte et sage exécution; &c.*

E X A M P L E :

He is *either* a wise man or a fool ;
 Ou il est sage, ou il est fou.

P R A X I S.

I have known several boys and girls that preferred reading
connoître (4 ir) garçon m. fille f. préférer (1)
 either to playing or walking. Either thro' clemency, or
jeu m. promenade f. par clémence
 policy, he pardoned him. Exercise either of the body
politique pardonner (1) exercice m. corps m.
 or the mind is absolutely necessary. Neither riches nor
esprit m. nécessaire c. richesses pl.
 dignities tempt him. He is either a wise man, or a fool.
tempter (1) ou sage c. fou m.

III. *The following Expressions tho' used in English before the Indicative require, in French, the Subjunctive after them ;*

V I Z.

<i>À Dieu ne plaise que,</i>	<i>Dieu veuille que,</i>	<i>Posez le cas que,</i>
<i>Afin que,</i>	<i>Encore que,</i>	<i>Pour peu que,</i>
<i>À moins que *,</i>	<i>Excepté que,</i>	<i>Pourvu que,</i>
<i>Au-cas que,</i>	<i>Jusqu'à ce que,</i>	<i>Quoique,</i>
<i>Avant que,</i>	<i>Loin que,</i>	<i>Sans que,</i>
<i>Bien que,</i>	<i>Malgré que,</i>	<i>Si ce n'est que,</i>
<i>Bien loin que,</i>	<i>Moyennant que,</i>	<i>Si non que,</i>
<i>Ce n'est pas que,</i>	<i>Nonobstant que,</i>	<i>Soit que,</i>
<i>De crainte que *,</i>	<i>Non pas que,</i>	<i>Supposez que,</i>
<i>De peur que *,</i>	<i>Plût à Dieu que,</i>	<i>Tant sans faut que.</i>

* The Particle *ne* is always used with these expressions, viz. *à moins que* (unless) *de crainte que* and *de peur que* (for fear) tho' no negation is intended by it ; Exam. Unless you stay here. *à moins que vous ne restiez ici* ; For fear you should fall, *de crainte que* or *de peur que vous ne tombiez* ; &c.

E X A M P L E:

I shall be there *before he is up*;
Je serai là avant qu'il soit levé.

P R A X I S.

You will speak French very soon, provided you follow
parler (1) bien pourvu que suivre (4 (ir))
 exactly my directions, although you think that language is
quoique croire (4 ir) langue f.
 difficult; but remember that you can neither speak nor
difficulté c. se souvenir (2 ir) pouvoir (3 ir)
 write it correctly, unless you learn the Rules. Whether
à moins que apprendre (4 ir) soit que
 you are rich or poor, you are no less obliged to be virtuous.
riches c. pauvre c. moins vertueux m., f.

IV. *The following Conjunctive Particles, tho' commonly used in English before the Present Tense, require the Verb in which they relate, to be in the Future* of the Indicative;*

V I Z.

As, *à mesure que.* As soon as, *cussi-tôt que.*
 As long as, *tant que.* After, *après que.*
 As many as, *autant que.* When, *quand.*

P R A X I S.

As you study and learn the French tongue, you'll find
étudier (1) apprendre (4 ir) trouver (1)
 more beauties | in it | . As long as I see that you are
y voir (3 ir)

* But when we speak of a continual action, such as we are wont to do, or usually do, the Verb must be used in French as in English. Exam. When he has dined, he goes to his business; *Quand il a diné, il va à ses affaires; &c.*

displeased with Mr. — I will not visit him. As soon
saché m, e f. centre visiter (1)
 as you have done your exercise, bring it to me. After we
faire (4 ir) thème m.
 have dined, we will take a walk together, in the Park.
diner (1) se promener (1) parc m.

V. *These two Particles But and For are conjunctive, when placed after a stop, and serve to connect a part of a sentence with another; their signification is mais (but) car (for): if they are in the middle of a sentence, but stands for only; and must be rendered into French by ne before the Verb, and que after it: as to for it becomes a Prepositive Particle, which must be rendered by pour;*

E X A M P L E:

1. It is but too true, for I have seen it;
Il n'est que trop vrai, car je l'ai vu.
2. This was not for you, but take it;
Celui-ci n'était pas pour vous, mais prenez le.

P R A X I S.

I desired but one favour of you, and you have refused it
désirer (1) faveur f. refuser (1)
 me. If you would give me but one exercise to do, and
wouloir (3 ir) devoir m.
 a lesson to learn, at a time, you would oblige me. Mr.
leçon f. à la fois obliger (1)
Holdfast has got money, but he will neither lend it, nor
argent m. ni prêter (1)
 spend it. Is he so covetous? it is but too true; but he is an
dépenser (1) avare c. vrai être (4 ir)
 honest man. England and Scotland make but one Island.
Angleterre Ecosse faire (4 ir) île f.

VI. *When the Particle if (si) is repeated twice in the same sentence, the second if is to be rendered into French by que, and the following Verb put in the Subjunctive ;*

E X A M P L E :

If you was in France, and if you had, &c.

Si vous étiez en France, et que vous eussiez, &c.

P R A X I S.

*If you | have a mind | to go and take the air, and if
 avez envie de prendre (4 ir)
 you want a coach, mine is at your service. If your uncle
 avoir besoin de service m. oncle m.
 does not come, and if you are obliged to go into the
 venir (2 ir) obliger (1) en
 country, I will lend you my horse. If you believe all sorts
 prêter (1) cheval m. croire (4 ir)
 of false reports made against you, and if you do not trust
 bruit m. se fier (1)
 to a good and sincere friend, you'll never be happy.
 bon ami m. heureux m.*

The Remarks which I think necessary to be added to the preceding Rules are—1st. That many Expressions ending with que, not unlike those which are annexed to Rule III. will have the next Verb remain in the Indicative; such as,

A cause que,

De même que,

Outre que,

A ce que,

De puis que,

Si bien que,

Ainsi que,

De sorte que,

Vu que, &c.

And others, which, by ending with de instead of que, require the Verb which follows them, to be in the Present Infinitive; such as, Au lieu de, faute de, &c. Many of them may be attended either by de or que, as Afin de and afin que, de peur de and de peur que, &c.—2dly. That the Conjunctive Particle and is not expressed in French whenever it comes after the Verb to Go or to Come immediately followed by another Verb; as in these Examples Go and fetch him, Allez le chercher; Come and play, Venez jouer; &c.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of INTERJECTIVE PARTICLES.

I. **INTERJECTIVE** Particles need not be much exemplified, as they are construed after the same manner in French as in English; except the Particle *malheur* (woe to) which requires the Article *au m.*, *à la f.*, *aux pl.* or the Particle *à* prefixed to the Substantive or Pronoun it refers to;

E X A M P L E:

Woe to those that resist the Almighty!
Malheur à ceux qui résistent au Toutpuissant!

P R A X I S.

Alas! where's now my flourishing season? Oh God!
Hélas à présent bel age m. Bon Dieu
 how fast do years slide away! O heavens! hear my
que vite s'écouler (1) écouter (1)
 voice. O earth! lend thy ear to my complaint. Woe
voix f. prêter (1) oreille f. plainte f.
 to thee, who despisest learning, and rejectest good councils?
mépriser (1) sciences pl. dédaigner (1) avis m.
 O fatal accident! O passion formerly so sweet! How
funeste jadis que
 hard this is to bear! Well! one must undergo one's
fénible Eb bien subir son
 fate. How impenetrable are thy decrees! Hush! I hear
destin m. impénétrable c. décret m. paix
 somebody. Fy! Fy! don't put yourself in a passion.
quelqu'un se mettre (4 ir) colère
 Pshaw! don't do that. Softly, what | are you at?
ouais faire (4 ir) doucement faites-vous.

Observe, that some of these expressions may receive different Denominations according to their different Uses; for instance, *Paix!* would be a substantive in another phrase; &c.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the foregoing Rules for the Construction of Particles.

Antony was perhaps as great a man as Augustus, tho'
Antoine *peut-être* *Auguste*
 he was not so fortunate as he. Cæsar was as courageous
heureux *que* *César* *vaillant*
 as Alexander. Man is unhappy but thro' anxiety. Always
Alexandre *malheureux* *inquiétude f.*
 be employed, for thou wilt never be better pleased, than
employer (1) *jamais* *plus* *content m., e f.*
 when thou hast something to do : business, by its motion,
quelque chose *affaires pl.* *leur*
 continually brings heat and life to the spirits ; but
procurer (1) *esprit m.*
 idleness greatly corrupts them. Speak not any thing
 paresse f. *corrompre (4 ir)* *Dire (4 ir)*
 concerning any one that is absent, that thou wouldst not
touchant *absent m., e f.*
 dare say, if he should be present. When thou canst
oser (1) *présent m., e f.*
 get a friend that will tell thee of thy failings or faults,
trouver (1) *parler (1)* *faible m.* *faute f.*
 grow not angry, nor excuse them ; but heartily thank him.
se facher (1) *excuser (1)* *remercier (1)*
 Let all men know thee, but none thoroughly ; as no man
que *connaître (4 ir)* *à fond*
 dares cross a river | on foot | till he has sounded its depth
passer (1) *à pied* *sonder (1)*
 even so a man is respected so long as the bottom of his
de même *étendue f.*
 capacity is not discovered. Follow my advice, and you
découvrir (2 ir) *suivre (4 ir)*
 shall have neither troubles to fear, nor vexations to endure.
peines *chagrins* *essuyer (1)*

THE END OF THE FIRST PART.

EXERCISES

CONTAINING

IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS.

PART THE SECOND.

IN the following Exercises I have endeavoured to introduce several of those idiomatical expressions which constitute a polite and elegant style, in order to take young Learners off from literal Translations, to which they are apt to stick too closely at first, and to inculcate into them certain turns of phrases which they have not been able to observe in the foregoing compositions. This is the end I proposed to myself in this Second Part; and that they may have a general idea of Translation, it would be proper to make them read attentively the following observations, which contain whatever is necessary to be previously known on this subject.

TRANSLATION is a *clear* and *faithful* expression of the thoughts of an author into a different language from that in which he has written.

A clear Translation consists chiefly in a purity of style, an elegance of expression, and a choice of proper words.

A faithful Translation is that which, confining itself to the words, and observing the sense of the author you translate, expresses exactly his thoughts.

As the turn of the phrase differs in every language, it is necessary to make an analysis and construction of the period you would translate; so that there be not a word, nor even the least particle of which you know not the government, the signification, and the power. You must also consider attentively, whether the period you translate will admit of different meanings, in order to find the true one, by comparing what has gone before, with what follows; but the surest way is to examine every term one after another, and reason over the construction.

When the true sense of the author is concealed, either by his obscure and perplexed manner of expression, or because you have not a perfect knowledge of his language, you must then enter into a strict examination of every word in the phrase, and read what he has said before or after the passage which appears difficult, without repining at the fatigue of so disagreeable but indispensable a task.

The difference of languages will not always permit you to keep the same metaphors, and the same allegories; they must however be retained where your language affords any such, or have recourse to others of a similar kind, when they are wanting. You must as nearly as possible express a metaphorical or allegorical word by a term of the same nature, when the metaphors are very conspicuous; for there are many words truly metaphorical, but which custom has rendered proper, as if they had a primitive signification.

Herein consists the difficulty of translation; as the idiom of one language is different from that of another, and as the expressions one is obliged to use in translating have not always the same beauties as those of the original.

On KNOWLEDGE.

Science f.

THE life of a wise man is lengthened by his ^{vie f.} | ^{allonger (1)} pursuits of knowledge, | as that of a fool by his passions. ^{acquisitions pl.} ^{comme} ^{fou m.}
 The time of the one is long, because he does not know ^b | ^{temps m.} | ^{parceque} | ^{savoir (3 ir)} what to do with it; | but the other distinguishes every ^c moment | of it | with useful and amusing thoughts; the ^d one ^e is always wishing it away, and the other ^f always ^g enjoying it. How ^h different is the view of past life, ⁱ in the man who | is grown old | in knowledge, from that ^j of him who is grown old in ignorance! The latter is ^k like the owner of a barren country, that ^l | fills his eye ^m with the prospect | of naked hills and plains, which ⁿ produce nothing; the other beholds an agreeable landscape, and can scarce cast his eye on a single spot of his ^o possessions, | that is not | covered with some beautiful plant. ^p

EXPLANATION.

^a His acquisitions. ^b know how to spend it. ^c one wishes it always elapsed. ^d other enjoys it always. ^e how the view of past life appears different to the man who. ^f that sees nothing but some hills and plains naked. ^g his land, &c.

ON LANGUAGES.

Langue f.

The understanding of languages serves | for an | intro-
intelligence f. *servir (2 ir) de*
 duction to all the sciences. We^a thereby come at the
science f. *par là*
 knowledge of a great^b many curious points, with very
connaissance f. *chose f.*
 little trouble; for by this means all times and coun-
peu de *moyen m.* *siècle m.*
 tries lie open to us. We become in a manner con-
être (4 ir) *en quelque façon*
 temporary with all ages, and^c inhabitants of the world,
de *siècle m.* *citoyen m.*
 and^d are qualified to converse with the most learned men,
converser (1) *savant m., e f.*
 who are always at hand, and whose^e ever useful and agree-
prêt m., e f. *toujours* *agré-*
 able conversation enriches the mind, and teaches us^f to
able e. *enrichir (2)* *esprit m.*
 make an equal advantage | of the virtues and vices of
profiter (1) *également* *vertu f.* *vice m.*
 mankind. Without the aid of languages, all these ora-
genre humain m. *secours m.* *ora-*
 cles are dumb to us; and | for want | of having the key
cle m. *pour* *faute* *cle f.*
 which can^g admit us to these treasures, we remain poor
pouvoir (3 ir) *trésor m.* *refier (1)*
 | in the midst | of immense riches, and interesting sciences.
au milieu *richesses f.*

EXPLANATION.

^a We acquire by it the. ^b great number of curious.
^c and with all the. ^d and we are in a condition of con-
 versing. ^e whose conversation ever useful. ^f us to profit
 equally of the. ^g can give us access to these treasures, &c.

On GEOGRAPHY.

Géographie f.

Geography is a science^a no longer esteemed a fine
science f. regarder (1)
 accomplishment only, but a necessary part of education;
acquisition f. nécessaire c.
 for^b no study seems better calculated for the entertain-
car étude f. convenable à amuse-
 ment and instruction of young persons than this. Geo-
ment m. jeune c. que
 graphy gives them a perfect idea of the exterior surface of
parfait m, e f. extérieur m, e f.
 the globe, of its natural and political divisions, and of the
globe m. politique c.
 curiosities of^c every part of it: hence^d it is justly called
curiosité f. tout m, e f. d'où
 the eye of History, the Soldier's companion, the Mar-
œil m. soldat m.
 chant's director, and the Traveller's guide. It is also a
directeur m. voyageur m.
 study^e of the first consideration among those qualities^f
étude f. parmi qualité f.
 requisite for forming the scholar; for it is adapted not
requis m, e f. homme savant m. propre c.
 only to gratify our curiosity, but also to^g enlarge our
satisfaire (4 ir)
 mind, to banish prejudices, and make us acquainted with
préjugé m. connaître (4 ir)
 our real advantages, and those of our fellow-creatures,
avantage m. semblable c.

EXPLANATION.

^a Science which is no more looked upon as. ^b for there is
 no study which seems fitter. ^c of all its parts. ^d hence one
 calls it with reason. ^e study which holds the first rank. ^f qua-
 lities that are requisite. ^g to encrease our knowledge, &c.

ON POLITENESS.

Politesse f.

Politeness is requisite to keep up the relish of life and
nécessaire c. procure us that affection and esteem, which every man
procurer (1) who ^a has a sense | of it | must desire. The established
estime f. tout
en maxims of Politeness ^b are little less than Good-nature
maxime f. diffère (1) peu établi m, e f. bon naturel m.
polished and beautified by art; they teach a person to be-
embellir (2) enseigner (1) se
have with deference towards every body, in all the com-
comporter (1) envers tout m, e f.
mon incidents of society; and particularly so, ^c whenever
rencontre f. particulièrement
a person's situation may naturally beget any disagreeable
personne f. pouvoir (3 ir) occasionner
suspicion | in him |. Thus old men know their in-
à son égard vieillard m. in-
firmities, and naturally dread contempt from the young;
firmité f. aprébender (1) jeunes gens m.
hence ^d well educated youth redouble the instances of re-
augmenter (1) marque f.
spect ^e to their Elders. Strangers and Foreigners appear
envers inconnu m. étranger m.
to be without protection; hence in all ^f polite com-
sans tout m, e f.
panies, they receive the highest marks of civility.
recevoir (2 ir)

EXPLANATION.

^a Who is sensible of it. ^b politeness differs little from the.
^c so every time that the situation of a person can naturally oc-
casion. ^d hence young people well educated. ^e respect to-
wards his superiors. ^f all companies where politeness reigns.

IDIOMATICAL EXERCISES. 105

On FRIENDSHIP.

Amitié f.

Friendship improves ^a happiness and ^b abates misery, ^c
augmenter (1) diminuer (1)
 by doubling of | our joy, and dividing our grief. When
redoubler (1) partager (1)
 you will get a friend, prove him first, and | be not
acquérir (2) premierement se
 hasty | to credit him; for sometimes a man is ^d a friend
bâter (1) quelquefois ami m.
 only for his own occasion, and will not abide in the day
seulement avantage m. continuer (1)
 of your trouble; but a faithful friend is a strong defence;
fidèle c. protection f.
 and he that has found ^e such a one, has found a treasure.
trouver (1) trésor m.
 Nothing ^f | doth countervail | a faithful friend, and his
être (4 ir) égal à
 excellency is invaluable. A faithful friend is ^g the | me-
bors de prix une mé-
 dicine of life |; and ^h whosoever feareth the Lord shall
docteur qui sauve la vie celui qui placer (1)
 direct his friendship right; for ⁱ as he is, so shall his friend
bien tel qu'il tel
 be also. Forsake not an old friend, for the new one is
abandonner (1) vieux m.
 not | comparable to him: a new friend is as new wine;
égal comme
 when it is old, you shall drink it with more pleasure.
quand boire (4 ir)

EXPLANATION.

^a Improves *our*. ^b and diminishes *our*. ^c misery in
 doubling *our*. ^d is friend. ^e found one such. ^f nothing is
 equal to. ^g is a medicine which preserves life. ^h and he that
 fears. ⁱ for such as he is, such shall be also his friend.

106 IDIOMATICAL EXERCISES.

On DISCRETION.

Discrétion f.

There are many shining qualities in the mind of man,
Il y a éclatant m, e f. esprit m.
 but there is none so useful as discretion: | it is this | which
mais si que c'est elle
 gives a value to all the rest, which sets them at work in
prix m. mettre (4 ir)
 their proper times and places, and turns them to the ad-
tems m. tourner (1)
 vantage of the person who ^a is possessed of them. With-
personne f.
 out it Learning is pedantry, Wit impertinence, and Vir-
savoir m. esprit m. ver-
 tue itself ^b looks like weakness. Discretion is the per-
tu f. ressembler (1) à ra-
 fection of reason, and ^c a guide to us in all the duties of
finement m. guide m. devoir m.
 life; and ^d does not only make a man the master of his own
rendre (4)
 parts, but also of ^e other men's. The discreet man finds
talent m. discret m. décou-
 out the talents of those ^f he converses with, and | knows
voir (2 ir) converser (1) sa-
 how | to apply them to proper uses. He carries his
voir (3 ir) appliquer (1) usage m.
 thoughts to the end of every action, and considers the ^g
jusqu'à considérer (1)
 most distant, as well as the most immediate effects of it.
aussi bien que immédiat m, e f. en

EXPLANATION.

^a Who possesses them. ^b itself resembles to weakness.
^c and our guide in all the duties. ^d and renders not only a
 man master. ^e of those of other men. ^f those with whom
 he converses. ^g the effects the most distant, as well as &c.

On TEMPERANCE.

Tempérance f.

Temperance has those particular advantages above all
avoir (3 ir) avantage m.
other means ^a of preserving health, that it ^b | may be prac-
moyen m. santé f. être (3 ir) pra-
ticable | by all ranks and ^c conditions, at any season, or ^d
praticable c. rang m. en saison f.
place. It is a kind of regimen which every man may
lieu m. espèce f. régime m. pouvoir (3 ir)
| put himself into | without ^e interruption to business, ex-
s'imposer (1) sans affaires pl.
pence of money, or loss of time. Every animal, ^f but man,
argent m. tout m, e f. ^a
keeps to one dish. Herbs serve to this species, fish to
se borner (1) mêts m. servir (2 ir) poisson m.
that, and flesh to a third. Man falls upon every thing
chair f. donner (1) chose f.
that comes ^g in his way; not the smallest fruit, or the least
se trouver (1) sur fruit m.
excrecence of the earth, scarce a berry or mushroom
excrecence f. à-peine baye f. mousseron m.
can escape him. *Socrates*, notwithstanding he lived in
échapper (1) quoique vivre (4 ir)
Athens during a great plague, never caught the least in-
Athènes peste f. attraper (1)
fection, which ancient authors unanimously ascribe to that
mal m. ancient m, e f. attribuer (1)
uninterrupted temperance which he always observed.
continuel m, le f. observer (1)

EXPLANATION.

^a Means to preserve health. ^b it is practicable by.
^c and all conditions. ^d or in any place. ^e without inter-
rupting his business, without expence of money, or without
loss. ^f animal, except man. ^g comes in his way, &c.

108 IDIOMATICAL EXERCISES.

ON CHEARFULNESS.

Bonne-humeur f.

Chearfulness banishes all anxious care and discontent,
banir (2) rongeant m, e f. chagrin m.
 soothes the passions, and keeps the soul in a perpetual
apaiser (1) maintenir (2 ir) dans
 calm. The man who^a | is possessed of | this excellent
tranquillité f. posséder (1)
 frame of mind, is not only easy | in^b his thoughts, | but:
disposition f. esprit m. content en lui même
 a perfect master of all the powers and inclinations of his
absolu puissance f.
 soul: He^d | comes with a relish to | all those goods which
ame f. recevoir (3) de bon cœur bien m.
 nature has provided for him, tastes all the pleasures
pourvoir (3 ir) goûter (1)
 | which^e are poured about | him, and does not feel^f | the
environner (1) sentir (2 ir)
 full weight | of those accidental evils which may befall
tout le poids maux m, pl. arriver (1)
 him. Cheerfulness and health mutually beget each
santé f. se produire (4 ir)
 other; with this difference, however, that we^g seldom
différence f. cependant rarement
 | meet with | a great degree | of health, which is not at-
voir (3 ir) beaucoup
 tended with a certain cheerfulness, but^h very often see
compagné de souvent
 cheerfulness where there is no great degree of health.
il n'y a pas

EXPLANATION.

^a Who possesses this excellent. ^b in himself. ^c but master absolute of all. ^d he receives with a good heart all. ^e which surround him. ^f feel all the weight of. ^g we see seldom much health. ^h but we see very often some &c.

On FEAR.

Crainte f.

It must be owned | that fear is a very powerful passion;
Il faut avouer *puissant m., e f.*
 Since it is one of the greatest virtues to subdue it. It
puisque *grand m., e f.* *vaincre (4 ir)*
 being^a implanted in us | for our preservation, | it^b is no
nous étant donnée *il n'est pas*
 wonder | that it sticks close to us, | as long as | we have
prévenant *s'attacher (1)* *tant que*
 any thing^c we are willing to preserve. But as life, and all
vouloir (3 ir) *vie f.*
 its enjoyments, would be scarce worth the keeping, if^d we
plaisir m. *à-peine* *qu'on en jouit*
 were under a perpetual dread of losing them; it is the
pour f.
 business of religion and philosophy to free us from all
but m. *délivrer (1)*
 unnecessary apprehensions, and direct our fear to proper
inutile e. *appliquer (1)*
 objects. If we consider the painfulness of this passion,
objet m. *considérer (1)* *tourment m.*
 and the violent effects^e it produces, we shall see how dan-
violent m., e f. *produire (4 ir)* *combien*
 gerous it is | to give way to it | upon slight occasions.
s'y abandonner (1) *léger m., e f.*
 Some | have^f frightened themselves into madness | and
perdre (4) l'esprit *de frayeur*
 others have^g given up their lives | to these apprehensions.
mourir (2 ir) *de peur f.*

EXPLANATION.

^a Being given us for. ^b it is not surprising that. ^c thing
 that we will preserve. ^d if we should live in a perpetual
 dread of. ^e effects which it produces. ^f have lost their
 senses through fear. ^g have died of these apprehensions.

110 IDIOMATICAL EXERCISES.

On I N D O L E N C E.

Indolence f.

Though indolence operates but slowly, yet it under-
Quoique mines by degrees the foundation of every virtue. A vice agir (2) que cependant
peu à peu a more lively nature would be ^a a more desirable tyrant tout m., e f.
actif-f m., ve f. than this rust of the mind, which gives a tincture of tirante
rouille f. nature to every action of ^b one's life. It is ^c | to no pur-
nature f. notre c. pose | to have ^d within ourselves the seeds of a thousand
dans nos ames séance f. good qualities, if we want the vigour and resolution ne-
qualité f. manquer (1) de force f. cessary for ^e | the exerting them. As death ^f brings
cessaire c. les mettre au jour rendre (4) persons | back to an equality, | so ^g does this image of
égal m., e f. ainsi this slumber of the soul, leave no difference between the
sommeil m. laisser (1) entre greatest genius, and the meanest understanding. A fa-
génie m. petit m. esprit m. culty of doing things remarkably ^h praise-worthy than
faire (4 ir) dignes de louange concealed, is ⁱ of no more use to the owner than a heap
caché m., e f. usage m. propriétaire m. monceau of gold to the man who dares not use it.
s'en servir

E X P L A N A T I O N.

^a Be a tyrant more desirable. ^b of our life. ^c is vain. ^d within our souls. ^e for to bring them to light. ^f renders all persons equal. ^g so this image, this slumber of the. ^h remarkably worthy of praise. ⁱ is no more of use

IDIOMATICAL EXERCISES. 111

On AMBITION.

Ambition f.

Ambition raises a secret tumult in the soul, it inflames
exciter (1) dans enflamer (1)
the mind, and ^a puts it into a | violent hurry | of thoughts:
esprit m. environner (1) de foule f. persée f.
it ^b is still | reaching after | an imaginary good, that has
poursuivre (4) ir bien m.
not the power to abate ^c or satisfy it. Most other things
pouvoir m. calmer (1) La plupart des
we | long for | can allay the cravings of their proper sense,
souhaiter (1) remplir (2) désir m.
and for a while set the appetite at rest: but fame is a good ^d
quelque tems gloire f.
so wholly foreign to our natures, that we have no fa-
éloigné m. de nature f. fa-
culty in the soul ^e adapted to it, nor any organ in the body
calité f. propre c. lui organe m.
to relish it; it is an object of desire ^f | placed out of the
goûter (1) dont on ne
possibility of fruition | It may, indeed, fill the mind for
sauvoit jouir pouvoir (3) ir remplir (2)
a while with a giddy kind of pleasure, but ^g it is such a
de chimérique c. mais
pleasure as makes a man restless and uneasy under it; and
rendre (4) inquiet m. mécontent m.
which does not | so much | satisfy the present thirst, as
tant apaiser (1) soif f. qu'il
excites fresh desires, and sets the soul on new enterprizes.
nouveau m, elle f. engager (1) dans entreprise f.

EXPLANATION.

^a And surrounds it with a croud of. ^b it pursues conti-
nually an. ^c abate it or satisfy it. ^d good so distant from
our. ^e soul which is adapted to it. ^f desire of which one can-
not partake. ^g but it is a pleasure that renders a man, &c.

On GAMING.

Jeu m.

Gaming seems to me of all vices the greatest enemy^a
to happiness; ^{parcître (4 ir)} ^{vice m.} ^{ennemi m.} its inseparable attendants are envy, deceit,
^{bonheur m.} ^{fourberie f.} impiety, and ^c | a whole train | of diabolical associates.
^{foule f.} Health, peace of mind, family, friends, country, and ^d in
^{tranquillité f.} ^{pays m.} ^{en} short, every ^e thing valuable and desirable are sacrificed
^{un mot} ^{de prix} ^{desirable c.} | to it. | All conversation and improvement | is put a
^{lui} ^f stop to | the moment gaming commences; friendship
^{nir (2)} ^{dès le} ^{commencer (1)} and society, benevolence and humanity cease, and | no-
^{bienveillance f.} ^{cesser (1)} thing further is thought of | but the ruin of those ^f you
^{on ne pense plus} ^{qu'à} ^{ruine f.} are in company with. It is ridiculous to hear some peo-
^{compagnie} ^{ridicule c.} ple term it an agreeable amusement, an inoffensive relax-
^{appeller (1)} ^{innocent m, e f.} ation, &c. those who so miscale it, must notwithstanding
^{représenter (1)} ^{cependant} allow ^z it to be an irrational and unimproving diversion,
^{convenir (2 ir)} ^{inutile c.} and that at the best it is but murdering time.
^{tout au plus} ^{tuer (1)}

EXPLANATION.

^a Enemy of our happiness. ^b envy, deceit, &c. continually attend it. ^c and a crowd of diabolical evils. ^d and in a word. ^e all that is valuable. ^f with which one (on) is in company. ^z allow that it is a diversion irrational, &c.

On H A P P I N E S S.

Bonheur m.

True happiness^a | is of a retired nature, | and^b an ene-
vrai m, e f. se plaire (4 ir) dans la retraite
 my^c to pomp and^d noise; it arises^e in the first place,
de la bruit m. naître (4 ir) d'abord
 from the enjoyment of one's self; and in the next, from
jouissance f. soi-même ensuite
 the friendship and conversation of^f | a few | select com-
amitié f. un petit nombre de
 panions: it loves shade and solitude, and naturally haunts
ombre m. fréquenter (1)
 groves and fountains, fields and meadows: in^g short, it
boisage m. champ m. prairie f. en un mot
 feels every thing^h it wants | within itself, | and receives
trouver (1) en lui-même
 no addition from multitudes of witnesses and spectators.
témoin m. spectateur m.
 On the contrary, false happiness loves to be in a crowd,
au-contraire sau-x m, se f. foule f.
 and to draw the eyes of the world upon her. She does
attirer (1) sur
 not receive any satisfaction from the applauses which she
aucun m, e f. applaudissement m.
 gives herself, but from the admiration which she raises
se donner (1) exciter (1)
 in others. She flourishes in palaces and assemblies, andⁱ
fleurir (2) palais m.
 | has no existence | but when^k she is looked upon.
paraître (4 ir) que regarder (1)

E X P L A N A T I O N.

^a Happiness delights in solitude. ^b and is. ^c enemy of the pomp. ^d and of the noise. ^e arises, at first. ^f of a small number of. ^g in a word. ^h thing of which it has need. ⁱ and does not appear. ^k when one (on) views her.

114 IDIOMATICAL EXERCISES.

CHARACTER of a RICH MAN.

GITO has a florid complexion, full-blown cheeks, a
 fixed bold eye, is high-chested, and his gait is steady
 and deliberate. He speaks with confidence; and pays
 but little regard to what others say. He spits | at a
 great distance from him, | and sneezes very loud. At
 table, and when walking, he takes up more room than
 another man. When taking a walk | with his equals,
 he places himself | in the | center of them. He inter-
 rupts, and corrects those who are speaking; but he him-
 self is not to be interrupted; and all listen to him so long
 as | he thinks proper | to talk. When seating himself, he
 sinks into a large easy-chair, and then knits his brows;
 afterwards pulls his hat over his eyes, that he may not see
 any one; then pushes back again his hat, in order to dis-
 cover his haughty and audacious front. He is sometimes
 jocular, laughs aloud, is impatient, presumptuous, cho-
 leric, loose. He is | of a political turn, | and myste-
 rious | with regard to the present times. | He fancies
 himself possessed of talents and genius—He is rich.

frais m. teint m. pendant m, e f.

fixe c.

estomac haut

démarche f.

délibéré m, e f.

parler (1)

faire (4 ir)

très peu d'attention

cracher (1)

fort loin

éternuer (1)

haut

à la promenade

prendre (4 ir)

place

En se promenant

égal m.

se placer (1)

au

inter-

s'empêcher (4 ir)

écouter (1)

il a envie

s'assoir (4 ir)

s'enfoncer (1)

fauteuil m.

froncer (1)

abaisser (1)

voir (3 ir)

personne f.

relèver (1)

à fin de

fier m, e f.

arrogant

visage m.

enjoué

c-

libertin m

politique c.

les affaires du tems.

talent m.

esprit m.

CHARACTER of a POOR MAN.

PHEBO is hollow-eyed, lank and meagre of visage.
a les yeux creux *sec m.* *maigre c.*
 He sleeps little, and his slumbers are very short. He
dormir (2 ir) *repos m.*
 is absent, he muses, and though a man of sense has a
abstrait *rêver (1)* *esprit*
 stupid air. He imagines himself | troublesome to those
s'imaginer (1) être *incommode c.*
 he is conversing with. He relates every thing lamely,
converser (1) *conter (1)* *froidement*
 and in a few words. No one listens to him, he does
peu de *Personne ne*
 not raise a laugh. He applauds and smiles at what others
faire (4 ir) rire *sourire (4 ir)*
 say to him, and is of their opinion. He runs, he flies,
courir (2 ir)
 to do them any little service. He is complaisant, bust-
rendre (4) *em-*
 ling, and a flatterer. There is no street, | how crowd-
pressé *fluteur m.* *rue* *si rem-*
 ed soever, | but he can easily pass through it, without the
plie de monde *y passer*
 least trouble, and slip away unperceived. When desired
embarras m. *se couler (1)* *prier (1)*
 to sit, he scarce touches the frame of the chair. He
à-peine *bord m.*
 speaks low in conversation, and | is inarticulate; | yet
bas *il articule mal*
 sometimes he discourses freely on public affairs, and is
quelquefois *librement*
 angry at the age. He coughs under his hat, and spits al-
contre *siècle m.* *tousser (1)* *cracker (1)*
 most upon himself; he endeavours to sneeze apart from
tâcher (1) *éternuer (1)*
 the company; and puts no person to the trouble of sa-
donner (1) *peine f.*
 luting, or paying him a compliment.—He is poor.
faire (4 ir)

VAIN HOPE FRUSTRATED.

ALNASCHAR was a very idle man, that never would
pareilleux set his hand to any business during his father's life. When
s'appliquer (1) durant vie f. his father died, he left him about an hundred drachmas
mourir (2 ir) drachme in Persian money. Alnaschar laid it out in glasses, bottles,
employer (1) and the finest earthen ware. | These he put up in a large
porcelaine f. mettre (4 ir) open basket, and having | made choice of | a very little
panier à-jour m. choisir (2) shop, placed the basket at his feet, and leaned his back
boutique f. fié m. s'appuyer (1) le dos upon the wall, in expectation of customers. And he was,
mur m. attente f. pratique f. in this posture, with his eyes upon the basket, he fell into
attitude f. yeux pl. s'abandonner (1) a most amusing | train of thought, | and was overheard
rêveries pl. entendre (4) by one of his neighbours, as he spoke the following words.
de voisin m. prononcer (1) suivant m, s f. 'This basket, says he, cost me an hundred drachmas,
coûter (1) which is all I have | in the | world. I shall quickly make
tout ce que au promptement two hundred of it, by selling it in retail. These two
en vendre (4) détail hundred drachmas will, in a very little while, | rise to
peu de tems produire (4 ir) four hundred, which of course will amount in time to four
conséquemment avec le tems thousand. As soon as by this means I | am master | of
Aussi tôt que moyen m. jouer (2) ten thousand, I | will lay aside | my trade of glass-man,
quitter (1) verrerie and turn jeweller. I shall then | deal in | diamonds,
se faire (4 ir) faire (4 ir) commerce de

pearls, and all sorts of precious stones. When I have got
 together | as much wealth as I desire, I | will make a pur-
 chase of | the finest house I can find, with lands, slaves,
 eunuchs and horses. I shall then begin to make a noise
 in the world. I will not, however, stop there, but still
 continue my traffic, till I have got together an hundred
 thousand drachmas. When I find myself master of an
 hundred thousand drachmas, I shall naturally set myself
 on the foot of a prince, and will demand the grand vizier's
 daughter in marriage, letting him know, | at the | same
 time, that it is my intention to make him a present of a
 thousand pieces of gold on our marriage night. As soon
 as I have married the princess, and given my father-in-
 law the thousand pieces of gold which I promised him,
 I will bring her | to my house, | where I shall take great
 care to breed in her a due respect for me. To this end,
 I shall confine her to her own apartment, make her a
 short visit, and talk but little to her. Her mother will
 then come, and bring her daughter to me, as I am seated
 on my sofa. The daughter | with tears in her eyes, | will

118 IDIOMATICAL EXERCISES.

fling herself at my feet, and beg of me to receive her into
se jeter (1) prier (1)
 my favour. Then, tired with her intreaties, I will, to
Alors de prière f.
 imprint in her more veneration for | my person, | draw up
imprimer (1) plus de moi retirer (1)
 my legs, and spurn her with my foot, | in such a manner
repousser (1) si vigoureusement
 that she shall fall down | a great distance | from the sofa.
tomber (1) bien loin

Alnaschar was so swallowed up in this chimerical vi-
absorber (1) chimérique c.
 sion, that he acted with his foot what he had in his
représenter (1)
 thoughts; and unluckily striking his basket of brittle-
pensée f. frapper (1) verre-
 ware, which was the foundation of all his grandeur, he
rie fondement m. grandeur f.
 kicked his glasses | out of | his shop into the street, and
jeter (1) de boutique f. dans rue f.
 broke them into ten thousand pieces.
briser (1) en morceau m.

“ Who are they that do not | raise visionary scenes
faire (4 ir) des châteaux
 “ in their minds? Every one dreams with his eyes open,
en l'air Chacun en veillant
 “ and nothing is more pleasing to us. On these occa-
rien plaire (4 ir) Dans
 “ sions our souls are deluded by a soothing error; but does
emporter (1) flateur-r m, se f. mais
 “ some accident recal our wandering senses, immediately
nous fait il rentrer en nous mêmes
 “ we are the insignificant creatures we were before.”
chétif m, ve f. auparavant.

THE END OF THE ENGLISH AND FRENCH EXERCISES.

FRENCH AND ENGLISH EXERCISES.

PART THE THIRD.

AS every Language has its Proprieties, Idioms, and Forms of Speaking peculiar to itself, which cannot be rendered Word for Word into any other Language, but with much Barbarity in some Places, or ridiculous Absurdities in others; in order to clear these Difficulties, and make the Learners observe what English Word or Expression is analogous to the French, it will be very proper, after they are well grounded in the Rules of Construction, to make them write the following Exercises, and then cause them to be very exact, in giving readily, without Book, Sentence by Sentence, the corrected English for the French, and *vice versa*.

These Exercises, as they are of all others the most difficult, so will they prove the most profitable; for by the Time the Scholars have carefully gone through them, according to the Method I, from my own Experience, recommend to others, they will have attained such a Facility in either translating or expressing their Thoughts in proper language, that they will be fit to be put to any Performance their Master shall think fit.

Exercises of bad French would have been introduced in this Third Part, for they are really useful, by shewing what is Wrong, in order to teach one to avoid it; but that they make so uncouth an appearance in Print: and it can be no manner of trouble to any teacher to supply the want of them, by false reading of any good Author, and requiring of his Pupils to find the Faults, and rectify them by the Rules.

USE and SIGNIFICATIONS of *On*.

I. **T**HE Particle *On* is rendered into English several ways; sometimes by *One*; Exam. *On croiroit*, *One* would think. Sometimes by the *Personal Pronouns*, they or we; Exam. *On dit*, they say; *On voit*, we see. Sometimes also by the indeterminate words, *People, Men, &c* Exam. *On s'imaginé*, people, or men think; but it is more generally Englished by the pronoun *it*, and converting the Verb that follows it from the active * voice into the passive;

E X A M P L E:

On croit que— *On avoit dit que—*
It is thought that— *It had been said that—*

T H E M E.

On raisonne toujours mal, quand on est possédé de quelque passion violente. ^{to reason} ^{wrong} ^{with} *On remarque tous les jours que les passions causent de grands déordres; cependant on ne cherche point à se garantir des surprises d'un ennemi si puissant, et si dangereux.* ^{to seek} ^{to guard against} ^{sudden attack} ^{so} *On croit souvent que l'amitié qu'on a pour une personne riche et puissante est sincère et désintéressée,* ^{powerful} ^{to think} ^{affection} ^{for} ^{rich} ^{can} ^{but} *mais on ne peut le savoir que lorsqu'elle*

* The Active voice, both in French and English, is made Passive by using the Auxiliary Verb *to Be* (être) with the Participle of the Preterite of a Verb active, Ex. *On raporte*, It is reported; &c. See page 73.

est dépouillée de ses biens et de son pouvoir; on démêle
stript riches to perceive
 alors à quoi tenoit cette amitié, qu'on croyoit si pure.
upon founded to think

II. *If the Verb following the Particle On is a Verb Active, attended by a Substantive or Pronoun as its object, that Substant. or Pron. must be made the subject of the Verb in English, and the Verb active changed into the passive voice;*

EXAMPLE:

On donnera demain des récompenses;
To-morrow rewards shall be given.

THEME.

On donne plus souvent des bornes à sa reconnoissance,
to set bounds gratitude
 qu'à ses desirs et à ses espérances. On ne méprise pas
than hope to despise
 tous ceux qui ont des vices; mais on méprise tous ceux
that but
 qui n'ont aucune vertu. On ne connoît le mal que font
no to know harm to occasion
 les passions, que lorsqu'il n'est plus tems de le prévenir.
but to prevent
 Si l'on * se faisoit une idée de l'Evangile sur la vie de | la
to form Concept by
 plûpart des | chrétiens, on le croiroit plein de maximes
most full
 contraires à celles que Jésus Christ a établies.
which to establish.

* L'on is the same as on with respect to its signification, but is used either after words ending with a Vowel, or the conjunct. particle et (and) for the better sound's sake only; Ex. *et l'on se croit en sûreté*; &c.

USE and SIGNIFICATION of *Que*.

I. **THE** Particle *que*, besides its general signification of that, is often used at the beginning and in the middle of a sentence, in lieu of several Particles, such as *où*, where; *avant*, before; *combien*, how; *pourquoi*, why; *comme*, as; &c. which are to be fully expressed in English *;

E X A M P L E:

Je ne le ferai point *que* vous ne veniez;
I will not do it unless you come.

T H Ê M E.

C'est à la Cour qu'on apprend les manières polies. Je
where ne me croirai pas safe [en sûreté] polite ways of behaving. que je n'aie obtenu son
 consentement. Que je serois heureux si j'avois suivi les
consent how happy to follow
 conseils de mon père! Que n'employez vous autant de
why to spend
 tems à éclairer et à cultiver votre esprit, que vous en
to enlighten mind as
 perdez à vous divertir et à paroître dans le monde.
to lose make a figure

II. *Que* relating to plus or moins, is rendered by than; but coming after a Verb that has ne prefixed to it, is to be Englished by but, only, and sometimes by nothing but;

E X A M P L E:

Je ne vois que ce que j'ai vu;
I see nothing but what I have seen.

* It is also used instead of *tandis que* and *comme*; Exam. *Il arriva que nous sortions*, i. e. *tandis que nous sortions*, or *comme nous sortions*,

^A
T H Ê M E.

Le monde récompense plus souvent les apparences du
to reward mérite que le mérite même. On n'est jamais si aisément
appearance trompé que quand on cherche à tromper les autres. Peu
itself de gens sont sincères, et la sincérité que l'on voit d'ordi-
never naire n'est qu'une fine dissimulation, pour attirer la con-
to deceive fiance ou l'estime des autres. Il n'y a | que ceux qui
to seek know sont méprisables qui craignent d'être méprisés.
persons which com-
monly artful to gain con-
fidence It is to despise

III. *The Particle Que is sometimes a sign of the third person of the Imperative Mood, and then it is to be rendered by the Word let *, with a Conjunctive Pronoun after it ;*

E X A M P L E :

S'il l'a trouvé, qu'il le garde ;
If he has found it, let him keep it.

^A
T H Ê M E.

Que les fautes des autres vous servent plutôt d'instruc-
faults tion, que de sujet de se moquer d'eux. Si votre frère | est
rather dans le dessein | de se réconcilier avec moi, qu'il fasse
cause to laugh at to have a mind to be reconciled to make
 premièrement sa paix avec Dieu, qu'il s'humilie en sa
peace to humble

* This Rule is also to be observed before the first Person of the Subjunctive Mood, when *que* serves to denote either Wishing or Imprecation ;
 Ex. *Que je meure si je vous mens*, let me die if I tell you an untruth.

présence, qu'il prenne une ferme résolution de ne plus
 l'offencer à l'avenir; qu'il évite toutes les mauvaises com-
 pagnies, alors je le recevrai volontiers en mon amitié.

^{to take}
^{for the future} ^{to shun} ^{bad}
^{then} ^{friendship.}

It may be observed—1st. That the Particle que used after c'est is a contraction of parceque, and is to be rendered into English accordingly; Exam. C'est que nous allons trop doucement, it is because we go too softly; &c — 2dly. That que is a redundant Particle before oui, non, and si, terminating a sentence—3dly. That que is used in an emphatical manner, before the last Substantive or Verb of a Sentence beginning with c'est; Exam. C'est un emploi très ingrat que d'enseigner les Langues, &c.*

USE and SIGNIFICATIONS of Y.

I. **THE** Particle Y is sometimes used instead of a Substantive or Pronoun, which is mentioned in the first Part of the Sentence; in such a case it must be rendered into English by him, her, them, or it, as the sense directs; with one of these Particles, at, by, for, to, with, or in, set before;

E X A M P L E:

Il est très rusé, ne vous y fiez pas;
 He is very cunning, don't trust to him.

* Except the pronoun *ce qui* or *ce que* should precede it; Exam. *Ce qui me fâche c'est qu'on me soupçonne d'y avoir part; ce que je prévois c'est que le roi le chassera; &c.*

^A
T H Ê M E.

Quelque découverte qu'on ait faite dans le monde, il
^{Whatever} y reste encore bien des choses inconnues. ^{made} Quand nous
^{to remain} arrivons aux différens âges de la vie, nous y manquons
^{many} souvent d'expérience, ^{unknown} malgré le nombre des années.
^{period} ^{to want} ^{for all} ^{year}

II. Sometimes the Particle Y relates to places, and in this
 acceptation is to be englished by there, thither, or within ;

E X A M P L E.

Il hait le Parc, ne l'y menez pas ;
He hates the Park, don't take him there.

^A
T H Ê M E

Quand irez vous en France ? J'y étois l'année passée ;
^{When} ^{last} mais j'espère y retourner l'Eté prochain : Je vous y ac-
^{to go again} ^{next} ^{to ac-}compagnerai si vous voulez, car j'ai envie d'y aller. C'est
^{company} ^{for} ^{a mind} le plus beau pays du monde. On n'y ressent point ordi-
^{in the} ^{to feel} nairement, ni les ardeurs de l'Eté, ni les rigueurs de l'Hi-
^{violent heat} ^{rigour} ver. Le Printems couronné de fleurs, s'y unit à l'Au-
^{with} tomne chargée de fruit ; l'air y est pur, clair, et serein, et
^{loaded} ^{serene} les habitans y surpassent en politesse les autres nations.
^{inhabitants} ^{to exceed}

USE and SIGNIFICATIONS of *En*.

I. *THIS* word *En** is used instead of repeating a Substantive or Pronoun that has been mentioned in the first part of the Sentence, and is to be rendered into English by any, some, him, her, them, or it, with one of these Particles of, for, with, about, set before it;

E X A M P L E :

Monsieur A. vous plait, vous en parlez toujours ;
You like Mr. A. you are always speaking of him.

T H Ê M E.

Si nous n'avions point de défauts, nous ne prendrions
 pas tant de plaisir à en remarquer dans les autres. L'il-
 lusion des avares est de prendre l'or et l'argent pour des
 biens, au-lieu-que ce ne sont que des moyens pour en
 avoir. Quoiqu'on en pense, je dis qu'il est plus honteux
 de se défier de ses amis que d'en être trompé.

no fault so much to observe error miser to look upon as riches means to acquire to think shameful to mistrust than deceived.

II. *This* supplying word (*en*) used in a sentence after either of these Adverbial Particles tant and autant, is a redundant particle in French, which is not to be expressed in English;

E X A M P L E :

J'ai autant de livres que vous en avez ;
I have got as many books as you have.

* Observe that the Rule laid down here concerning *en* does not regard the Particle prepositive *en* (in or into) this being a supplying word that relates to persons, things, or places; and, if to the latter, is often expressed by *from thence*; Exam. *En venez-vous ?* Do you come from thence; &c.

^A
T H Ê M E.

Vous n'avez pas tant d'argent que j'en ai. Ils n'ont pas
 autant de tems pour se divertir qu'il en a. Avez vous au-
 tant de plaisir à Londres, que vous en aviez à Paris? N'a-
 t-on pas plus de liberté ici que l'on en a dans votre pays?
more money time as in more in country

This Particle is also redundant in many other cases, such as en donner à garder; en faire accroire; and the like; serving only, in these expressions, to change the signification of the verb; instances of this sort are too numerous to be inserted here.

USE and SIGNIFICATIONS of *le* and *ne*.

I. **T**HE supplying Particle *le* or *l'* is frequently used, in French, instead of a Substantive, Adjective, or Participle, on which occasions it is either rendered by the Particle *so*, or not expressed at all, which is most commonly the case;

E X A M P L E :

Est il médecin? Oui, il l'est;
 Is he a physician? Yes, he is.

^A
T H Ê M E.

Avez-vous été chirurgien dans quelque hospital? Oui,
 je l'ai été. Pourriez-vous remplir la place de ce méde-
 cin? Oui, je le pourrois. Nous étions occupés hier toute
 la journée, et vous ne l'étiez pas. Vous n'êtes pas aussi
 sensible que je le suis au malheur qui vous menace.
surgeon to act in physician could busy day so as misfortune to threaten

II. *The word ne is left out in English, when prefixed to the Particle le, and both le and ne preceded by some comparative expressions denoted in French by plus, moins, meilleur, &c. See the Rules upon Comparifon, p. 15;*

E X A M P L E:

Il est plus eſtimé que vous ne l'êtes;
He is more eſteemed than you are.

T H È M E.

Votre couſin eſt plus accoutumé au travail que je ne le
accuſtomed than
 ſuis; ſon frère n'eſt-il pas meilleur écrivain que tu ne
brother writer
 l'eſ? Sa femme eſt plus grande qu'il ne l'eſt. Sa
wife tall
 ſœur eſt-elle meilleure écolière que nous ne le ſommes?
better

III. *The ſame Particle ne is alſo to be omitted in English, after the Adjective autre, the Conjunctive Particle à-moins que, and any of the Tenses of the Impersonal Verb il y a;*

E X A M P L E:

A-moins que vous ne me l'ordonniez;
Unless you order it me.

T H È M E.

Il eſt tout autre que je ne le croyois. Ne faites point
quite than to think to do
 cela à-moins que vous ne vouliez ſcandalifer tout le
to be willing every
 monde. Il y a plus de dix ans que je ne l'ai vu.
it is ſince to ſee

USE and SIGNIFICATIONS of *Il y a*.

I. **THE** Impersonal Verb *il y a* or *y a-t-il*, is used to denote a quantity of Time, Space, and Number. When it implies a quantity of time, it is to be englished by *it is*, or *is it*, and the particle *que* following it, by *since*;

EXAMPLE:

Y a-t-il long-tems que votre père est sorti ?
It is long since your father has been gone out ?

THEME.

Il y a 285 ans que l'on établit une sévère inquisition en
years to establish
Espagne, contre l'exercise de toute autre religion que
Spain exercise but
celle de l'église Romaine. Combien y a-t-il que Charles I.
church How long
roi d'Angleterre, fut décapité? Il n'y a que 114 ans. Ce
king beheaded It
fut sur en échafaut dressé dans la rue près des fenêtres de
scaffold raised near
la grande salle de *White-hall*. Y a-t-il long-tems qu'on
banqueting-house long
a découvert l'Amérique? Il y a plus de 291 ans. Elle
to discover It
fut découverte par le célèbre Christophe Colombe, Gé-
by renowned Gé-
nois, pour lors au service du roi d'Espagne.
noise at that time

II. When the Impersonal Verb *il y a* is used to denote a quantity of space, without specifying the number of leagues, miles, &c. it is to be turned into English by *it is*. Exam. *Il n'y a pas loin de chez vous à la Bourse*, It is not far from your house to the Exchange. But if there is any parti-

cular quantity or number mentioned, it is to be rendered by there is for the Singular, and there are for the Plural;

E X A M P L E:

Il y a 30 millions d'ames en France;
There are 30 millions of souls in France.

T H E M E.

Quelque différence qu'il paroisse entre les fortunes, il y
Whatever *to appear* *station of life*
a néanmoins une certaine compensation de biens et de
nevertheless *good*
maux qui les rend égales. Il y a bien des personnes qui
evil *equal* *many*
aiment les livres comme des meubles, plus pour parer et
to like to have *household-goods* *set off*
embellir leur maisons que pour orner et enrichir leur
to adorn
esprit. Il y a du mérite sans élévation, mais il n'y a pas
mind *merit* *exaltation*
d'élévation sans quelque mérite. Combien y a-t-il de
some *How far*
Londres à Paris? Il y a environ deux cens soixante miles.
London

III. If the Impersonal Verb il y a is attended by a Substantive as its object, this Substantive may be made, in English, the Subject of the Personal Verb following, instead of the relative qui, which commonly precedes it; and in this case, neither il y a, nor the relative, are to be expressed in English;

E X A M P L E:

Il y a des peines qui sont salutaires;
Some pains are wholesome.

T H Ê M E.

Il y a peu de choses qui soient impossibles dans ce monde; l'application pour les faire réussir nous manque plus que les moyens. Il n'y a rien qui soit si difficile à persuader que le mépris des richesses, si l'on ne tire ses raisons du fond de la religion chrétienne. Il y a des gens qui plaisent avec des défauts, et d'autres qui sont dégoûtés avec du mérite. Il y a des actions qui paroissent ridicules, et dont les raisons cachées sont cependant très sages.

IV. *When the Word en is used with il y a *, as it generally refers to a number, the Verb must be rendered by there is for the Singular number, and there are for the Plural;*

E X A M P L E:

Il n'y en a qu'un; il y en a deux;
There is but one; there are two of them.

T H Ê M E.

Le chemin qui mène à la vie est étroit, et il y en a peu qui le trouvent. Tous ceux qui s'appellent Chrétiens prétendent à la vie éternelle, mais il y en a bien peu qui

* Observe, that when y and en are used together in the same sentence, y is always placed before en, and both are set immediately before the Verb, except when it is used affirmatively in the Imperative Mood, in which case it is placed after. EXAMPLE. Mettons y en, let us put some in it.

qui veulent souffrir la moindre chose pour la mériter.
to be willing least to deserve
 S'il est question d'aspirer à quelques emplois, ou à quel-
to have in view employment
 ques dignités temporelles, il n'y en a point qui ne soient
temporal
 disposés à souffrir toute sorte de peine pour les mériter.
ready any kind pain

USE and SIGNIFICATIONS of *Il faut*.

I. **T**HE *Impersonal Verb* *Il faut* denotes the necessity of doing something, and is to be Englished, if before an Infinitive, by it is necessary, or by must, with either one, I, we, he or she, for its subject, according to the sense of the speech;

E X A M P L E:

Il faut bien vivre pour bien mourir ;
We must live well to die well.

T H Ê M E.

Avant que de désirer fortement une chose, il faudroit
Before eagerly
 examiner quel est le bonheur de celui qui la possède.
to examine happiness to possess.
 Il ne faut pas regarder quel bien nous fait un ami, mais
to consider to do
 seulement le désir qu'il a de nous en faire. Pour donner
only
 une véritable idée du repos, il faut dire qu'il est comme
true idea rest, as
 une béatitude de l'âme qui le console de toutes ses pertes;
blessedness to comfort loss
 et qui lui tient lieu de toutes sortes de biens.
to serve instead riches,

II. *If the Verb depending on the impersonal il faut, is a Verb active, attended by either a Substantive or Pronoun, as its object; that Substantive or Pronoun may become in English the subject of the impersonal, and the Verb be made passive;*

EXAMPLE:

Il faut instruire soigneusement les enfans;
Children must be carefully instructed.

THEME.

Il faut l'avouer de bonne foi, qu'il y a bien des foibles
to confess sincerely many
à réformer dans l'homme; et que l'on fait à tous mo-
in to commit
mens de grandes fautes, parcequ'on | se laisse trop aller |
fault to give away too much
à son penchant et à ses passions. La plupart des | héros
inclination most
sont comme de certains tableaux; pour les estimer, il ne
as picture to esteem
faut pas les regarder de trop près. Quand l'occasion
to look at too When opportunity
se présente, il ne faut pas la laisser échapper.
to offer to let to escape.

III. *When the Impersonal Verb il faut is followed by the Particle que with the next Verb in the Subjunctive, the following tenses il faut, il falloit, il falut, are to be englished by must; the future tense, il faudra, by shall be obliged; and this Imperfect il faudroit, by should, with the Substantive or Pronoun following que, set before them as their subject;*

EXAMPLE:

Il faudra que je m'en serve;
I shall be obliged to use it.

T H Ê M E.

L'empereur Tibère avoit une grande modération
Tiberius
 souffrir les mauvais discours que l'on tenoit sur sa con-
to suffer to bold con-
 duite, et il disoit à ce propos, que dans une ville libre,
du on this account city fre-
 comme Rome, il falloit que les langues et les esprits
tongues mind
 fussent libres. Je ne disconviens pas que tous les peuples
to deny all
 ne soient capables de vertus héroïques, mais il faut que
capable heroical
 vous conveniez aussi que les Romains ont surpassé en cela
to grant also to excel
 toutes les autres nations; c'est ce que les historiens rapportent.
other it is to relate

IV. *The impersonal il faut* is used sometimes before a Substantive without any Verb depending on it, in which case it is englished by making the Substantive the subject of the Verb, and using the auxiliary to Be with such of these Adjectives, necessary, requisite, or needful, as the sense requires;*

E X A M P L E:

Il faut de l'argent pour plaider;
Money is requisite to go to law.

T H Ê M E.

Il faut peu de choses pour rendre | le sage | heureux,
few to make considering man

* If a Pronoun conjunctive is also used between *il* and *faut*, which denotes one's present want, the conjunctive is to be changed into a personal, to be made the subject of either the Verb *want* or *must have*. Ex. *Il me faut de l'argent*; I want or I must have money; *Il leur faut*; they want, &c.

mais rien ne peut rendre un | fou | content. Il y a de
^{nothing} certains cas où il ne faut qu'une action de vigueur pour
^{case} | faire taire | la médifance. Il ne faut qu'une punition
^{to silence} d'une trop grande févérité pour faire perdre aux écoliers
^{slandering} toute l'estime qu'ils ont pour leur maître, et pour rallentir
^{severity} leur zèle. Il falloit bien des amis pour obtenir cela.
^{to lose} ^{punishment} ^{scholars} ^{to slacken} ^{real} ^{friend}

V. *The Impersonal verb il faut is also used at the end of a sentence, either with the Pronoun ce que or the Particle comme before it; in which case it is to be rendered into English by should, and sometimes by should do, or should be;*

E X A M P L E:

Cela n'est pas fait comme il faut;
That is not done as it should be.

T H Ê M E.

La véritable éloquence consiste à dire tout ce qu'il faut,
^{true} et à ne dire que ce qu'il faut. J'eus beaucoup de peine
^{but} à faire votre paix avec votre père, | il avoit absolument |
^{with} résolu de ne pas vous pardonner; c'est pourquoi prenez
^{to forgive} garde de ne pas l'offenser | à l'avenir | et de vous com-
^{care} porter comme il faut. Refaites cet ouvrage, il n'est pas
^{have} comme il faut; et s'il me plait je vous paierai.
^{to do again} ^{work} ^{to please} ^{to pay.}

USE and SIGNIFICATIONS of *Il fait*.

I. **THE** *impersonal Verb Il fait used with Substantives or Adjectives denoting the disposition of the Air or Weather, is to be englished by it is, and sometimes there is;*

E X A M P L E:

Il fait bien froid, et il fait brouillard;
It is very cold, and there is a fog.

T H Ê M E.

Je vais vous dire une remarque que je fis dernièrement;
 dans l'espace de 24 heures, il fit quatre sortes de tems, qui
 auroient fort bien assorti les quatre saisons de l'année:
 la matinée auroit été propre pour un | jour de Printems, |
 vers midi il fit assez chaud pour un Eté d'Angleterre; sur
 le soir le ciel se couvrit, il fit un tems d'Automne; et la
 nuit il tomba une pluie assez froide; pour un tems d'Hiver.

observation to make lately
space hour weather
to suit season
morning Spring-day,
towards noon Summer in about
sky to be overcast Autumn;
to fall rain cold Winter.

The same Impersonal (il fait) construed with one of these Adjectives bon, mauvais, meilleur, or dangereux, followed by the name of a place, is also to be rendered in English by it is; Example: Il fait bon ici; it is good being here; il fait cher vivre à Londres, it is dear being in London; il fait dangereux sur mer, it is dangerous at sea; &c. Before jour, nuit, soleil, and clair de lune, it is likewise resolved by the same Impersonal it is. Exam. Il fait jour à présent à cinq heures, it is day-light now at five o'clock; il fesoit clair de lune à minuit, it was moon-light at twelve o'clock last night; &c.

F R E N C H

IDIOMS AND GALLICISMS.

PART THE FOURTH.

THE Idiom of the French Language chiefly consists in the use and different acceptations of certain words, which, for want of being properly taken notice of in Dictionaries, perplex young learners in either their construing or translating from the French, as much as any other difficulty they meet with in our language; I have therefore selected those most in use, which being illustrated in a concise manner, are disposed in the following alphabetic order, for the more ready finding of them.

A, *avoir*.

THE Verb *Avoir* signifies in its proper sense to Have; but when we speak of being cold or hot, it is to be rendered by the Verb to Be, with the part, said to be cold or hot, set before it as its object; see the *Practical Gram.* p. 84;

E X A M P L E:

Elle a si froid aux mains que, &c.
Her hands are so cold that, &c.

T H Ê M E.

J'ai si froid au mains, que je ne puis écrire. Vous
cold avez souvent froid à la tête, car vous n'ôtez votre
often that can write
head for to pull off

chapeau que rarement; | au contraire | j'ai fort chaud
bat seldom on the contrary warm
 à la tête; mais je ne | me gêne | jamais avec mes
but to stand upon ceremonies
 amis; autrement quel plaisir y auroit-il avec eux?
friend or else

B, beau.

The word beau does not always signify fine, for when it is used after the Verb avoir, it serves to denote that one does a thing to no purpose, and it is to be englished, conjointly with the auxiliary verb, by altho', whatsoever, for all that, &c.

E X A M P L E:

J'eus beau l'attendre, il ne vint pas;
Although I waited for him he did not come.

T H Ê M E.

J'ai eu beau faire et beau dire, votre adresse l'a emporté,
to do to say cunning to triumph
 et vous avez trouvé moyen | d'avoir raison. | On a
to find to justify one's self
 beau chasser le chagrin, il revient toujours. Vous avez
to drive out care to return again
 beau lui donner des avis, c'est tems perdu, vous dis-je.
to give advice lost to tell

C, connoître.

The Verb connoître when said of material things, that are the objects of our senses, is englished by to Know; but if it is said of things that are the objects of our intellectual faculties, the verb to Distinguish is to be used;

E X A M P L E:

Je connois cet homme de vue;
I know this man by sight.

T H Ê M E.

Le langage pur et l'élégance ne se trouvent guères que
distion elegancy to be found rarely
 parmi les courtisans, et encore est-ce parmi les plus déli-
among courtiers curi-
 cats qui savent connoître le bon usage. Comme il con-
ois to know how use. As
 noissoit fort bien les meilleurs, il les choisit pour lui.
best to pick

D, *devoir*.

The Verb devoir, being said of a debt, signifies to Owe: but implying an obligation or necessity of doing a thing, is to be rendered into English by either ought or must; and by should; for the Imperfect of the Subjunctive-mood;*

E X A M P L E :

Vous devez penser sérieusement à cela ;
You ought to think seriously on that.

T H Ê M E.

Vous devriez écrire à votre père, pour lui | faire savoir |
to write father to let know
 que vous | avez besoin | de livres. A table, et dans l'é-
to want book
 cole les écoliers doivent être tranquilles, et aucun d'eux
scholar still none
 ne doit parler, excepté celui que le maître a nommé.
but appointed.

* But the same verb (*devoir*) serving to express an action to be done, in which case it is always prefixed to a verb in the Infinitive, is then to be rendered by the Auxiliary *to Be*; Exam. *Je dois aller demain à Londres,* I am to go to London to-morrow: see the note inserted Part I. p. 49.

E, être.

The general signification of the Verb être is to Be; but it must be englished by the auxiliary to Have, before the Participle Preterite of the Reflected Verbs; see the Gram. p. 84;

E X A M P L E:

Je me suis promené dans le Parc;
I have walked in the Park.

T H Ê M E.

C'est une maxime constante chez toutes les nations,
que les hommes ne sont plus ce qu'ils étoient autrefois;
et qu'ils se sont avilis et dégradés. Votre frère s'est | pres-
crit | des règles qui lui seront d'une très grande utilité.

man maxim with nation formerly; more corrupt, brother to make to one's self rule very advantage.

F, faire.

The Verb faire, besides its general signification of to Make, is liable to many others, as may be seen by the following sentence;

E X A M P L E:

Il tâche de faire de l'argent;
He endeavours to raise some money.

T H Ê M E.

Il me | fera mourir | si je ne vous mets entre ses mains;
que ferai-je? En sauvant la vie à un innocent, vous ne
le trompez que pour l'empêcher de faire un grand crime;
c'est pourquoi | faites semblant | de n'en rien savoir.

to put to death to deliver up to do ? life to deceive to hinder to commit to pretend to know.

G, gens.

The word Gens is masculine when it comes before its Adjective, and feminine when the Adjective comes first; but whether Gens comes before or after its Adjective, if another Adjective or Participle should follow them, this last must be of the masculine Gender: it is generally englished by people, or by men, according to the sense;

E X A M P L E:

Il y a de sottes gens parmi les gens parvenus;
There are silly men among exalted people.

T H Ê M E.

Je n'aimerois pas à vivre parmi les Espagnols, car ce
to love to live Spaniards,
sont des gens remplis de malice; mais je ne m'ennuyerois
full but to be tired
jamais de vivre avec les Anglois, car ce sont de fort bon-
with English good
nes gens. Les vieilles gens se plaignent toujours.
old to complain

H, honnête.

These words honnête and honnêteté are used in French either to denote the observance of good manners, or some particular virtue; and are to be rendered accordingly;

E X A M P L E:

Tout le monde dit qu'il est fort honnête;
Every body says that he is very civil.

T H Ê M E.

Elle est belle sans défaut, fier sans orgueil, tendre et
beautiful defect, lofty pride,
empressée avec honnêteté, et enjouée avec modestie. Ceux
obscuring bashfulness sprightly

dont la naissance ne | répond | pas à la dignité de leurs
birth to be equal
 charges doivent être civils, honnêtes, et obligeans.
poſt modest

I, Imaginer.

Though the Verb imaginer is always used in French to denote some operation of the mind, yet its application is to be minded before it is rendered into English, as it stands sometimes for inventer, and sometimes for penser or croire ;

E X A M P L E :

Ce plan est très mal imaginé ;
This scheme is very badly contrived.

T H Ê M E.

Avez-vous imaginé pour notre affaire quelque chose de
to think on affair
 favorable. C'est une chose facile, bien imaginée, et la
advantageous. not difficult, invented
 plus aisée du monde à exécuter, ainsi ne la différez point
easy to execute to put off
 à un autre jour. Imaginez-vous l'état où je me trouve.
other to think on situation

J, jouer.

The verb jouer with the Article du, de la, or des, before the name of a musical instrument is to Play upon ; but used figuratively, before any other Substantive, it is to be englished by to Play with or to Use, without any Article expressed ;

E X A M P L E :

Préparez vous à jouer des mains ;
Get ready to use your hands.

T H Ê M E.

Voyant que ni ses larmes ni ses conseils ne servoient de
to find tears advice to avail

rien, il prit le parti de jouer d'adresse. Je suis certain
 que, dans pareil cas, il n'y en a pas un parmi vous,
 quelque prudent qu'il soit, qui n'eût joué des couteaux.
resolution stratagem. among cautious sword.

L, laisser.

The Verb laisser being construed with ne and pas, attended by de, denotes always affirmation in the next Verb; which may be rendered into English several ways, generally comprizing one of these Particles, still, nevertheless, yet, for all that, &c.

E X A M P L E:

Cela ne laisse pas d'être vrai *;
 Yet or nevertheless that is true.

T H Ê M E.

Malgré tout ce que | je lui ai dit, il ne laisse pas de le
For all that
 faire. Vous ne savez que faire de ces bagatelles, elles ne
to do. to know
 laissent pas d'avoir leur usage. Il faut donc consentir à
trifle, use. therefore
 une chose qu'on ne laisseroit pas de faire sans vous.
without

M, même.

The word même has different significations; if it is a Pronoun, it is to be rendered by self, for the singular, and selves plural; when an Adjective by same; lastly, if it be an adverbial Particle by even, which distinctions must be attended to;

* We frequently use *que* in expressions of this kind, for elegance sake only; Ex. *Cela ne laisse pas que d'être joli*, nevertheless that is pretty; in which phrase, and the like, as mentioned before, p. 123, this particle occasions no difference in the translation.

E X A M P L E :

S'il ne le fait pas, je le ferai moi-même ;
If he does not do it, I'll do it myself.

T H Ê M E.

Il est bien dur pour moi que je ne puisse pas vous
very hard can
 plaire ; je crois vraiment, que quand même je ferois l'im-
to please to believe truly too im-
 possible, tous mes efforts seroient vains. Je ferai la même
possibilities endeavour
 chose pour vous, que vous avez daigné de faire pour moi.
that

N, ne.

The Particle ne implies, in general, a negation, and is often englished conjointly with another Particle of denial which it has a reference to; such as ne and jamais, (never) &c. but if it depends on que, from which it is always separated by one or more words, it is englished by only, but, or nothing but;

E X A M P L E :

Il n'est que dix heures et demie ;
It is but half an hour past ten.

T H Ê M E.

Nous n'avons jamais nos défauts que par vanité. Il
to confess fault through
 n'appartient qu'aux | grands | d'avoir de grands défauts
to belong great men
 Nous oublions aisément nos fautes, lorsqu'elles ne sont
to forget error,
 fues que de nous. Il n'y a rien que je ne fasse pour vous.
to know nothing to do

O, ou.

The Particle ou, not accented, is an alternative word, Englished by either and or; if accented thus, où, and refers to a place, by where, whither, whence; but when it relates to a Substantive mentioned before, it is to be rendered into English by wherein, in which, or to which, according to its sense;

E X A M P L E:

Si vous saviez l'état où il est;

If you knew the condition in which he is.

T H Ê M E.

Que dirai-je de ce siècle, où je vois un libraire tour-
to say ages bookseller pest-
 menté par une foule de petits esprits, sans goût ou sans
ered wretched scribblers
 expérience; où je le vois contraint ou d'écouter leurs
obliged listen to
 discours insipides, ou de s'attirer des insultes?

P, penser.

The verb penser is often used in the Preterite, or conjointly with the Present Tense of the auxiliary Verb avoir, before a Verb in the Infinitive, to denote what was upon the point of being done; in which case it is to be rendered by to Be like;

E X A M P L E:

La semaine passée j'ai pensé mourir;

Last week I was like to die.

T H Ê M E.

Nous pensâmes nous noyer en traversant la rivière.
to be drowned to cross river.
 Il a pensé être tué ce matin d'une | tuile tombée | de
killed with tile that fell
 dessus le toit d'une maison. J'ai pensée aller vous voir
top to see
 ce matin, mais Monsieur N — m'en a empêché.
but to hinder,

Q, *quitte*.

The Adjective quitte being said of a debt is to be rendered into English by quit or clear; and of getting out of a bad affair or trouble, by free or rid; but in many cases its construction is pretty difficult, as it cannot be translated literally;

E X A M P L E:

Il en fut quitte pour la peur;
Fear was his only punishment.

T H Ê M E.

Sa blessure étoit si grande et parut si dangereuse qu'on
wound
 douta d'abord s'il en réchaperoit, cependant il en a été
to recover
 quitte pour garder le lit pendant deux ou trois mois. Son
to keep month.
 antagoniste en fut quitte pour une égratignure à la main.
scratch band.

R, *rendre*.

The Verb rendre used before these two Substantives service and justice, is to be rendered into English by to Do, and not by to Render, which is the literal signification of it;

E X A M P L E:

Vous me rendrez un grand service;
You will do me a great service.

T H Ê M E.

Je prens la liberté de venir vous prier d'une grace, et si
to take to beg favour
 vous | avez la bonté | de me l'accorder, vous me rendrez
to be so kind as to grant
 le plus grand service du monde. Monsieur, s'il est en
world
 mon pouvoir de vous rendre service, je le ferai volontiers.
power to do

S, sentir.

The Verb sentir is rendered into English by to Feel or to Smell, according as the thing is the object of the sense affected; it is used also to express some perceptions of the mind;

E X A M P L E:

Il lui fera sentir sa colère;
He'll make him feel his anger.

T H Ê M E.

Il vaut mieux qu'un soldat sente la | poudre à canon |
to be better soldier gun-powder
 que l'ambre. Après cela, Sancho reprit sa bourse avec
amber to take again
 tant de joie qu'il ne se sentoit pas de sa chute. Son maître
so much fall
 le sentant | en état | de marcher, en tira bon augure.
able to look upon as omen.

T, traiter.

The Verb traiter, implying to Regale, is to be englished by to treat or entertain; but if it implies either an outrageous behaviour, as traiter mal. or a friendly usage, as traiter avec amitié, &c. it is to be rendered by the verb to use;

E X A M P L E:

Je vous traite en ami;
I entertain you like a friend.

T H Ê M E.

Si vous êtes plus diligent que vous n'avez été, je vous
more trab
 traiterai | avec amitié; | mais si vous continuez d'être
in a friendly manner to continue

pareffeux, je vous traiterai avec la dernière févérité. Si
idle Dieu nous traitoit févérement, que deviendrions nous ?
God *with severity* *greatest* *to become*

V, venir.

The Verb venir, followed by the Particle de and another Verb in the Infinitive Mood, serves to denote a thing just done, and is to be englished by either to be just, or to have just, in their proper tense, and according to the sense of the Sentence ;

E X A M P L E :

Je viens d'arriver de campagne ;
I am just arrived from the country.

T H Ê M E.

Nous venions de commencer quand il entra. Le roi
to begin vient de le nommer à cet Evêché. Vous | ne sauriez |
to name *bishoprick.* *cannot*
 lui parler, parcequ'il vient de partir pour Londres. Je
because *to set out*
 n'osai lui dire la raison du parti que je venois de prendre.
to dare *resolution* *to take.*

Observe, that when any of the Tenses of the Verb venir is followed by à and a verb in the Infinitive Mood, it denotes sometimes a thing which is or was going to be done, according to the Tense the verb is in, and, in such a case, it may be resolved in English by a corresponding Tense of the verb to Begin ; Exam. Quand il vint à parler, tout le monde se tut, when he began to speak, every body was silent ; &c. But, if it should serve to indicate only the possibility there is for the action, expressed by the following verb, to happen ; it is then englished by to Chance or to Happen ; Exam. Je serois perdu, si Mr. B— veroit à savoir cela, I should be undone, if Mr. B— should happen to know that ; &c.

GALLICISMS.

THESE are some particular French expressions, very difficult to be understood by learners, as they cannot be rendered into English *verbatim*. These difficulties are not peculiar to the French language, but common to all others; and in these, and other such phrases, the delicacy of a language does so much consist, that it is impossible to exhibit one's thoughts with propriety and perspicuity without being conversant with them. The following Gallicisms may serve as Examples.

THESE expressions d'aujourd'hui en huit, and d'aujourd'hui en quinze, are gallicisms which are to be rendered into English by this day se'nnight, and this day fortnight;

T H Ê M E.

Je crois que j'irai en campagne d'aujourd'hui en huit,
to go country
 et j'espère to come back revenir d'aujourd'hui en quinze. Je suis per-
sure
 suadé que quand once | une fois | vous y serez, vous ne re-
 viendrez pas si-tôt. Je vous donne ma parole que d'au-
too soon word
 jourd'hui en quinze, si je me porte bien, je viendrai vous
to come
 voir. | Quand est-ce que | votre frère ira en France? Il
When to
 espère partir de Lundi en huit, s'il fait beau tems.
to expect weather.

This expression avoir la bonté de, is englished by these words to Be so kind as, with respect to the proper Tense;

T H Ê M E.

Je vous prie d'avoir la bonté de me dire comment vous
 apellez cela en François. Si vous avez la bonté de
 m'accorder cette grace, il n'y a rien que je ne fasse pour
 vous en témoigner ma reconnoissance. J'espère que vous
 aurez la bonté de me recommander à vos amis. A moins
 que votre frère n'ait la bonté de me prêter un cheval pour
 deux ou trois jours, je ne saurois y aller.

These two expressions j'aime mieux, and j'aimerois mieux, are both expressed in English by I had rather, or by the Verb to Choose rather; the latter is to be used in its proper Tense;

T H Ê M E.

J'aime mieux | me relacher de | quelque chose, que
 d'avoir un procès avec un homme litigieux. N'aimeriez
 vous pas mieux rester ici que de retourner aux Indes?
 J'aimerois mieux souffrir quelque petite injure d'un ami
 que de me brouiller avec lui, quoique j'aimasse mieux
 mourir que de passer pour poltron. Lequel aimeriez-vous
 mieux apprendre, ou à faire des armes, ou à danser?

Speaking of some distemper or ailment, we make use of avoir mal, with the Article au, à la, or aux before a Substantive,

which is englished by to Have a pain in, if the disorder is inwardly; but by to Have a sore, if it is outwardly;

T H Ê M E

Pourquoi ne vintes-vous pas hier, comme vous me l'avez promis? J'avois mal à la tête, c'est pourquoi ma mère ne voulut pas me permettre de sortir. Où est votre frère qu'il n'est pas venu avec vous? Il a mal à la jambe, et il est obligé de garder le lit. Je n'ai point pu écrire mon thème hier, parceque j'avois mal au doigt. Mon cousin seroit venu avec moi, mais il a mal à l'estomac.

Why to come as to promise would to go out. brother with leg to keep bed. to write exercise because finger. cousin but

This expression, c'en est fait de moi, is to be rendered into English by I am undone, used in its proper Tense, Person, and Number, though it is always Impersonal in French;

T H Ê M E.

C'en est fait de lui, si vous n'avez pitié de sa condition. C'en étoit fait de nous, si nous avions perdu cette [lettre de change.] C'en eût été fait de moi si vous ne m'aviez pas prêté de l'argent. C'en sera fait de vous, si vous ne quittez la boisson. C'en auroit été fait de votre sœur, si votre père ne l'avoit mariée. Je crois que c'en seroit fait de moi, si je perdois mon père, et ma mère.

if to take pity on to lose bank-note to lend money. to leave off drinking. sister to marry to think to lose

This expression demeurer en repos, is to be rendered by to Be quiet, or still, with respect to its proper Tense, &c.

T H Ê M E.

Vous ne demeurez jamais en repos, que vous n'ayez fait quelque mal. Demeurez en repos, ou bien je vous punirai. Si vous ne demeurez en repos, je vous ferai repentir de votre folie. Vous ne vouliez pas demeurer en repos quand je vous l'ai ordonné, vous voyez | à présent | ce qu'il vous arrive. Si vous eussiez demeuré en repos, vous ne vous seriez point attiré cette disgrâce-là.

This phrase il ne faut pas s'étonner, is rendered into English by it is no wonder, used impersonally thro' all the Tenses ;

T H Ê M E.

Il ne faut pas s'étonner si nous prospérons si peu, puisqu' | au lieu | de servir Dieu, nous servons le Démon par notre mauvaise conduite, par notre irréligion, et par le peu d'amitié que nous portons à notre prochain ; il ne faudroit pas s'étonner si Dieu détruisoit le monde, car il n'a jamais été si corrompu qu'il l'est à présent.

This expression, je souhaiterois pouvoir, in the beginning of a period, ought to be expressed in English by I wish I could ;

T H Ê M E.

Je souhai terois pouvoir engager mon père à me
 laisser apprendre | le François, | je l'apprendrois de vous.
to let French to persuade father
 Je souhai terois pouvoir faire connoissance avec Monfr.
of
 votre frère, car c'est un honnête homme. Je souhai terois
to get acquainted
 pouvoir vous servir, je le ferois de tout mon cœur. Je
for best
to serve, to do heart.
 souhai terois pouvoir faire ce que vous desirez de moi.
to do to desire

. *This French expression, il ne tient qu'à vous, is to be rendered into English by it is in your power; the Verb is impersonal, and is used through all the Tenses of each Mood;*

T H Ê M E.

Il ne tient qu'à vous d'être heureux, car vous avez les
 meilleurs parens du monde. happy Il ne tenoit qu'à vous d'être
best world
 bon écolier, car vous avez assez d'esprit. Il ne tiendrait
scholar, understanding.
 qu'à vous de vous réconcilier avec Madame N— car elle
to be reconciled
 | est impatiente | de renouveler amitié avec vous. Il ne
longs to renew
 tiendra qu'à vous de me recommander à vos amis. Il
to recommend
 n'eut tenu qu'à votre tuteur de vous | faire tort. |
guardian to wrong.

These words, il me tarde de, are to be rendered into English by I long to; but this French expression is only used in the Present and Imperfect Tenses of the Indicative Mood;

T H Ê M E.

Il me tarde de vous donner ce que je vous dois, car je
 n'aime pas devoir à personne. Ne vous tarde-t-il pas
 d'aller en campagne pour | mettre ordre à | vos affaires?
 Il me tardoit de voir votre père, pour lui dire combien
 vous méritiez d'être loué de votre diligence. Il lui tardoit
 de vous voir. Il me tarde d'être parfait dans la langue
 Françoisé, car c'est la langue des savans, et de toutes les
 personnes du monde les plus spirituelles, et les plus polies.

The manner of rendering this expression, trouver à redire à, is by to find fault with, a due attention being given to the Tense, Person, and Number which the Verb is in;

T H Ê M E.

Momus trouvoit à redire que le taureau eût les cornes
 au dessus des yeux, et disoit, qu'il devoit les avoir au des-
 sous, afin qu'il vît mieux où il frapoit. Je ne puis trou-
 ver à redire | à tout ce que | vous faites, et ce que je
 blamerois en un autre me paroît en vous une vertu. Vos
 amis, qui trouvent beaucoup à redire à la démarche que
 vous allez faire, sont plus à plaindre que vous.

This expression, rendre des actions de graces, is to be rendered into English by to return or give thanks, used in such Tense, Person, and Number, as the sense directs;

T H Ê M E.

Après avoir fait un grand massacre des ennemis, il se mit à genoux au milieu du champ de bataille, et rendit des actions de graces pour la victoire qu'il venoit de remporter. Nous devrions tous les jours louer le Seigneur, et lui rendre, avec ferveur, des actions de graces pour toutes les faveurs dont sa bonté nous comble.

*slaughter
to fall on
field
victory
to gain
to praise
with
which
to bestow.*

These words s'en prendre à, or au, à la, &c. may be expressed by either to lay the fault upon, or to impute it to, used in the proper Tense, Person and Number;

T H Ê M E.

Les malheureux qui se sont attirés leur infortune par une mauvaise conduite, ont tort de s'en prendre aux astres. Hobbes, le plus grand génie d'Angleterre depuis Bacon, ne sauroit souffrir qu'Aristote ait tant de crédit dans la théologie, et il s'en prend aux divisions de l'église. On ne doit pas toujours s'en prendre aux maîtres, si leurs élèves ne sont point également des progrès dans les sciences.

*to bring upon one's self
to be in the wrong
star
since
to bear
divinity,
church
always
pupil
equally
in*

The word tout joined to an Adjective, is sometimes to be rendered by as or although: Example, Tout malade qu'il est, il peut, &c. Though he is sick, he can, &c. or else, As sick as he is, he can, &c. and sometimes may be omitted, if the sense admits of it; Exam. Sick as he is, &c.

T H Ê M E.

Aristote tout grand logicien qu'il étoit, n'en a pas eu plus de méthode. Tout convaincus que nous sommes de la vanité des biens de la terre, nous ne laissons pas que de les rechercher. La vertu tout austère qu'elle est | fait goûter | de véritables plaisirs. Il n'y a point d'ouvrage, tout accompli qu'il soit, qui ne fondît au milieu de la critique, si son auteur vouloit en croire tous les censeurs qui ôtent chacun l'endroit qui leur déplaît.

logician
more convinced
goods
to seek after
to procure pleasure work,
perfect to fall to pieces
criticism, to believe
to strike out part

There are many other Idioms and Gallicisms which I shall omit inserting, lest I should swell this book too much; the foregoing terms and expressions being sufficient to shew the genius of the French Language: others may be learnt either by conversing with learned men, or by reading good books.



INTRODUCTION INTRODUCTION

A L A

T O

Versification Française.

French Versification.

LA versification Française est l'art de faire des vers suivant certaines règles*. Les règles qu'on en va donner regardent premièrement ce qui fait la forme mécanique du vers ; secondement ce qui en constitue la forme intérieure.

Il n'y a rien en soi-même de plus aisé que ce qui fait la forme mécanique du vers François. La *Césure*, qui ne regarde que les vers héroïques, et les vers de cinq piés, est une bagatelle ; et le partage des hémistiches, dans quoi elle consiste, ne renferme aucune difficulté. La *Rime* est presque la seule qu'y reconnoissent, non seulement bien des Lecteurs, mais même bien des Poètes.

FRENCH versification is the art of making verses according to stated rules. The rules which can be laid down relate first to that which composes the mechanical form of verse, and secondly that which constitutes its interior form.

Nothing is of itself more easy than that which composes the mechanical form of French verse. The *Cesura*, which respects only heroic verses, and verses of five feet, is of a trifling nature ; and the division of hemisticks or half-verses, wherein it consists, contains in it no difficulty at all. Rhyme is almost the only one which a great number of Readers, and even Poets, acknowledge to be in it.

* Outre les Règles qui sont particulières à la versification Française, elle a aussi des principes généraux qui sont communs à toutes les Langues, comme la Peinture de l'objet, l'Expression, l'Aplication des figures, la Clarté, l'Aisance, l'Harmonie, et le Nombre.

A l'égard de la forme intérieure du vers, la différence qu'il y a entre la prose et les vers, se réduit à celle qu'y peuvent mettre les *Transpositions*, et les *Licences*.

With respect to the interior form of verse, the difference betwixt prose and verse is reduced to that which the Transpositions and Licences, used therein, may occasion.

On distingue ordinairement cinq sortes de vers François, par le nombre des syllabes qui entrent dans leur composition.

Five sorts of French verse are commonly distinguished by the number of syllables that compose them.

1°. Ceux de douze syllabes, qu'on appelle *Alexandrins**, héroïques, ou grands vers; Exem.

1. Those of twelve syllables, which are called Alexandrines, heroics, or grand verse; Exam.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
Pré-ve-nez les be-soins d'un a-mi mal-heu-reux,
Sans pro-di-ga-li-té ren-dez vous gé-né-reux.

2°. Ceux de dix syllabes; qu'on appelloit autrefois *communs*, parcequ'on en fesoit un usage fort fréquent; Exem.

2. Those of ten syllables; which were formerly called common verses, on account of their being frequently made use of; Exam.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
Si vous vou-lez goû-ter les vrais plai-sirs,
Ne don-nez pas l'es-for à vos dé-sirs.

3°. Ceux de huit syllabes; qu'on emploie assez souvent dans l'Épître, l'Ode, les Chançons, &c. Exem.

3. Those of eight syllables; which are very often introduced in Epistles, Odes, Songs, &c. Exam.

* Ils doivent ce nom, suivant quelques Auteurs, à *Alexandre de Paris*, un de nos vieux Poètes, qui les employa le premier; ou, suivant quelques autres, à un poème sur *Alexandre le Grand*.

¹ ² ³ ⁴ ⁵ ⁶ ⁷ ⁸
 Je veux et n'ac-com-plis ja-mais,
 Et je fais le mal que je hais.

4°. Ceux de la quatrième espèce ont sept syllabes, et on les emploie dans toutes sortes de style; Exem.

4. *Those of the fourth sort consist of seven syllables, and are used, for any subject whatsoever; Exem.*

¹ ² ³ ⁴ ⁵ ⁶ ⁷
 Mes sens sont glas-sés d'es-froi,
 Dieu jus-te ré-pon-dez moi.

5°. Enfin, nos plus petits vers, du moins généralement reçus, sont ceux de six syllabes; Exem.

5. *Lastly, our shortest verses, as they are generally considered, are those of six syllables; Exem.*

¹ ² ³ ⁴ ⁵ ⁶
 Qui vous peut re-te-nir ?
 Dai-gnez l'en-tre-te-nir.

Les vers qui ont moins de six syllabes ne sont guère d'usage que pour la Poësie lyrique, et quelques petites pièces badines.

Verses that contain less than six syllables are seldom used, except for lyric Poetry, and some small humorous pieces.

A R T. I.

DE LA CESURE.

LA Césure est un repos* qui coupe le vers en deux parties ou hémistiches.

A R T. I.

Of the CESURA.

THE Césura is a pause which divides the verse into two parts or hemisticks.

* Ce repos bien ménagé contribue beaucoup à la cadence, et au nombre oratoire des vers François, il y est même nécessaire; car il seroit pénible de bien soutenir sa voix sur dix ou douze syllabes de suite sans respirer.

Il n'y a que les vers de douze et de dix syllabes qui aient ce repos ; il doit être à la sixième dans les vers de douze syllabes, et à la quatrième dans ceux de dix syllabes ; Exem.

None except verses of twelve and six syllables have this pause ; it should be at the sixth, in verses of twelve syllables, and at the fourth in those of six syllables ; Exem.

Vains fantômes d'honneur—c'est pour toi qu'un héros,
Immole chaque jour—sa vie et son repos.

Veiller, prévoir—agir avec constance,
Sur nous du ciel—attire l'assistance.

Le dernier mot du premier hémistiche peut terminer par l'e muet, pourvu que le mot suivant commence par une voyelle * ; Exem.

The last word of the first hemistich may end with e mute, provided the following word begins with a vowel ; Exem.

Manquer à sa parole, et trahir sa promesse,
C'est une fourberie, ou c'est une foiblesse.

Mais la Césure ne vaut rien, et par conséquent le vers est défectueux, si le sens en est interrompu ; Exem.

But the Césura is wrong, and the verse consequently defective, if the sense of it is thereby interrupted ; Exem.

Tachez toujours de vous—rendre aimable & poli.
Fuyons les vices qui—nous font perdre l'a grace.

Un mot terminé par une autre voyelle que l'e muet

A word that is terminated by any another vowel than e

* Si au-contrainre le mot suivant commence par une consonne, la Césure ne sauroit y être ; puisque le propre de cet e, est de faire couler la voix sans s'arrêter.

ne peut être suivi d'un autre mot qui commence aussi par une voyelle ou une *h* muette; Exem.

mute, cannot be followed by another word that likewise begins with a vowel or h mute; Exam.

Que l'aimable vertu a peu d'adorateurs.
Évitez le souci, et fuyez la colère.

Ainsi les phrases précédentes ne peuvent former des vers; dans les deux premières la Césure n'est pas bonne parce que le sens exige que le mot *vous*, et celui qui le suit (*rendre*) soient prononcés tout de suite, et sans pause: dans les deux dernières, la rencontre des voyelles est trop désagréable à l'oreille pour la Poésie.

Thus the foregoing phrases cannot form verses; in the two first the Césura is not proper, because the sense requires that the word vous, and that which follows it (rendre) be pronounced all together, and without a pause: in the two last, the clashing of two vowels is too disagreeable to the ear to be admitted in Poetry.

ART. II.

DE LA RIME.

LA Rime est la convenance de deux sons qui terminent deux vers*. On distingue deux sortes de rimes, la féminine, et la masculine. La première est celle des vers qui terminent par

ART. II.

Of RHYME.

RHYME is the agreement of two sounds that terminate two verses: we admit of two sorts of rhyme, the feminine and masculine. The former belongs to those verses that end with a mute

* On a beaucoup discuté si la Rime est une source de beautés ou de défauts dans les vers, mais Monsieur De Voltaire, dans sa Poétique, en fait voir les avantages, et même la nécessité.

un e muet, soit seul, soit e, *whether it be single, or
suivi d'un s ou de nt; Exam. with an s, or nt; Exam.*

Toute chose fixe et durable,
A ce qui passe est préférable.

Regardons les malheurs des autres,
Et nous nous plaindrons moins des nôtres.

La termination *ent*, des
verbes seulement, forme
aussi une rime féminine par-
ce que cette syllabe a le son
de l'*e* muet; mais l'*ent* des
autres Parties d'oraison, et
l'*oient* dans les Imparfais
de nos verbes sont des rimes
masculines, parce que ces
syllabes produisent un son
distinct; Exam.

*The termination ent, of
verbs only, likewise forms a
feminine rhyme, because this
syllable has the sound of the
mute e; but the ent of other
Parts of speech, and the
oient in the Imperfect tenses
of our verbs, belong to the
masculine rhyme, because these
syllables produce a distinct
sound; Exam.*

La campagne a perdu les fleurs qui l'embellissent,
Les oiseaux ne sont plus d'agréables concerts,
Les bois sont dépouillés de leurs feuillages verts,
N'est-il point encor tems que me plaintes finissent.

La rime masculine est
celle qui se termine par une
autre lettre que l'*e* muet, soit
seul, soit suivi d'un s ou
de nt*; Exam.

*The masculine rhyme is that
which ends with any other
letter than e mute, whether
single, or connected with s or
nt; Exam.*

Les qualités du cœur, l'exacte probité,
Sont l'ame et le bien de la société.

* Ces Rimes, tant masculines que féminines, peuvent être ou riches, ou simplement suffisantes, suivant le plus ou le moins d'uniformité qu'il y a entre les sons des deux mots.

Le travail est souvent le père du plaisir,
Je plains l'homme accablé du poids de son loisir.

Le deux hémistiches d'un vers ne doivent pas avoir une convenance de sons, ni le dernier hémistich d'un vers ne doit pas non plus rimer avec le premier du vers précédent, ou du vers suivant; Exem.

The two hemisticks of a verse should not have the same sounds, neither ought the last hemistick of a verse to rhyme with the first of the preceding verse, or of the following; Exam.

Si tu voulois demain te lever de matin.
Il ne tiendra qu'à toi de partir avec moi.

Il faut pour les avoir, employer tous les soins,
Ils sont à moi du moins, tout autant qu'à mon frère.

Il faut observer que la convenance de sons et d'orthographe ne peut autoriser la rime d'un mot avec lui même, ni d'un simple avec son composé*; mais deux mots entièrement semblables, par le son et l'orthographe, riment bien ensemble, lorsqu'ils ont des significations différentes; Exem.

It must be observed, that the affinity of sounds and spelling cannot authorize the rhyming of a word with itself; but two words although they are entirely alike, both in sound and spelling, rhyme well together when they have different significations; Exam.

Tel que vous me voyez, Monsieur, ici présent,
M'a d'un fort grand soufflet fait un petit présent.

* La Rime des différens Composés d'un même verbe, est cependant reçue; mais il faut que dans l'usage ils aient des significations éloignées: ainsi, on peut faire rimer *promettre* avec *permettre*, &c.

ART. III.

Des Transpositions.

CE que j'entends par transposition est lorsque l'ordre de la phrase est renversé, et qu'un substantif, ou un verbe qui dépend d'un autre, passe devant celui de qui il dépend, et qui le gouverne; Exem.

C'est Dieu qui *du néant* a tiré l'univers,
C'est lui qui *sur la terre* a répandu les mers.
A vous former le cœur appliquez vous sans cesse.
Au coup qui vous menace il est tems de songer.

Lorsque les transpositions n'embarassent pas le sens de la phrase, elles donnent de la grace et de la noblesse à la Poésie*; mais comme notre langue a ses usages, elle rejette celles qui rendent le vers dur, ou obscurcissent la pensée; un exemple tiré des Poésies du feu Abbé Regnier des Marais rendra cette observation plus sensible.

Philis fait manier et la laine et la soie,
Et c'est avec tant d'art que sa main les emploie,

ART. III.

Of Transpositions.

WHAT I mean by transposition is, when the order of the phrase is perverted, and when a substantive or verb that depends on another, goes before that on which it depends, and which governs it; Exam.

When transpositions do not perplex the sense of the phrase, they add grace and excellence to Poetry; but as our language has its peculiar customs, it rejects such as render the verse rough, or obscure the sentiment; an example quoted from the Poems of the late Abbé Regnier des Marais will make this observation more intelligible.

* Ces avantages de la transposition, ou de l'inversion, ont fait croire à quelques-uns, que c'étoit elle qui caractérisoit le vers François, et qui en étoit l'essence; mais nous avons d'excellens vers sans ce secours.

Qu'on diroit qu'à l'ouvrage elle-même autrefois
Minerve ait pris plaisir de lui former les doigts.

Dans le troisiéme de ces vers, le terme *elle-même* rend la pensée obscure et équivoque, et l'on ne découvre point son rapport jusqu'à ce qu'on soit venu au terme de *Minerve*. On croit que c'est de *Phylis* qu'on veut parler. Voici, ce me semble, comme on pourroit réformer ces deux derniers vers.

In the third of these verses the term elle-même renders the sentiment obscure and equivocal ; and we do not discover its relation till we come to the word Minerva. One imagines that Phylis is intended to be spoken of. I think we may amend these two last verses in this manner.

Qu'on diroit que Minerve elle-même autrefois
A l'ouvrage ait pris soin de lui former les doigts.

Dans ce cas ci, il n'y a plus d'ambiguïté dans le vers ; et cette construction est suivant l'usage de notre langue qui requière que le pronom *elle-même*, *lui-même*, &c. se rapporte toujours au substantif précédent le plus prochain, avec lequel il peut s'accorder.

In this case, there is no longer any ambiguity in the verse, and this construction is agreeable to the usage of our language, which requires that the pronoun elle-même, lui-même, &c. should always answer to the Substantive preceding the nearest of those with which it can agree.

ART. IV.

DES LICENCES.

LES Licences poétiques consistent dans l'emploi de plusieurs termes dont la

ART. IV.

Of LICENCES.

POETICAL Licences consist in making use of divers terms ; which prose would.

prose n'oseroit se servir, et dans le retranchement d'une lettre, selon le besoin que les poètes en ont *

Quoique la poésie se serve, en général, des mêmes mots que la prose; cependant il y a quelques expressions que les poètes emploient heureusement, et qui ne plairoient pas dans la prose. Telles sont *antique* pour *ancien*; *coursier* pour *cheval*; *l'Eternel* pour *Dieu*; *humains* pour *hommes*; &c. Exem.

not presume to employ, and in the cutting off a letter, according to the necessity poets are under of so doing.

Although poetry makes use, in general, of the same words as prose, there are nevertheless some expressions which poets employ to great advantage, and that would be displeasing in prose. Such are antique for ancien; coursier for cheval; l'Eternel for Dieu; humains for hommes; &c. Exam.

Où sont, Dieu de Jacob, tes *antiques* bontés?

On fait cas d'un *coursier* qui fier et plein de cœur,
Fait paroître en courant sa bouillante vigueur.

L'Eternel en ses mains tient seul nos destinées.

En lisant avec attention les bons poètes, on trouvera bien d'autres expressions propres au stile poétique seulement.

Nous écrivons en prose *je crois, je fais, je prévois*, &c. les poètes selon le besoin emploient ou retranche l's dans ces mots †; Exem.

In reading elegant poets with attention, we shall find many other expressions that are peculiar to the poetical style only.

We write, in prose, je crois, je fais, je prévois, &c. poets, as they see occasion, either use or reject the s in these words; Exam.

* Je n'entreprends point de marquer ici toutes les Licences outrées dont quelques Poètes se sont servis sans autorité; mais seulement celles qui sont d'un usage établi.

† Cette Licence de retrancher l's ne se prend que pour les premières Personnes de certains verbes: on ne doit point l'étendre aux secondes Personnes; ainsi *tu crois, tu vois, tu joues*, &c. ne peuvent y être admis.

Je le fais, et malgré les maux que je prévoi
Un desir curieux m'entraîne loin de moi.

Ils écrivent de même *juste* ou *jusques*; encore ou *encor*; *guère*, *guères* ou *n'aguères*. Ils emploient aussi *avecque* pour *avec*; cependant les bons poètes se servent rarement de ces dernières Licences, et ceux qui s'appliquent à la poésie ne doivent pas oublier ce précepte de Boileau.

They write in like manner jusque or *jusques*; encore or *encor*; *guère*, *guères*, or *n'aguères*. *They likewise make use of avecque for avec*; however, good poets seldom take these last mentioned liberties, and such as apply themselves to poetry should not be unmindful of this precept of Boileau.

Envain vous me frappez d'un son mélodieux,
Si le terme est impropre ou le tour vicieux;
Mon esprit n'admet point un pompeux barbarisme,
Ni d'un vers ampoulé l'orgueilleux solécisme.
Sans la langue en un mot l'auteur le plus divin,
Est toujours quoiqu'il fasse, un méchant écrivain.

A R T. V.

De l'Arrangement des Vers.

DANS les différentes manières dont les vers doivent être arrangés, il faut considérer la rime, et le nombre des syllabes. Quant au nombre des syllabes, il est arbitraire dans les pièces libres, et dans la poésie lirique; mais il est

A R T. V.

Of the Arrangement of Verses.

IN the different orders wherein verses must be disposed, we should consider the rhyme, and the number of syllables. With respect to the number of syllables, it is arbitrary in loose pieces and lyric poetry; but is limited in other pieces of a serious.

déterminé dans les autres pièces sérieuses et les grands poèmes, qui sont écrits en vers de douze syllabes* comme le poème Epique, le poème Dramatique, l'Eglogue, l'Élégie, la Satire, l'Épître. A l'égard de la rime, deux vers masculins peuvent être suivis de deux vers féminins, comme les suivants,

nature, and in lofty poems, that are written in verses of twelve syllables; such as the Epic poem, the Dramatic poem, the Eclogue, the Elegy, the Satire, the Epistle. With regard to the rhyme, two masculine verses may be followed by two feminine, like the next,

Dès la pointe du jour au bord de ces ruisseaux,
J'accorde mes chansons à celles des oiseaux;
Je parle des beautés de celle que j'adore,
Je parle de l'ardeur du feu qui me dévore.

Ou bien deux vers féminins peuvent être suivis de deux vers masculins, et ainsi jusqu'à la fin; cette disposition des vers, ainsi que la précédente, s'appelle poésie à rimes plates, et est d'usage pour tous les grands poèmes; Exem.

Or else two feminine verses may be followed by two masculine ones, and so on to the end; the disposition of these verses, as well as the foregoing, is called flat-rhymed poetry, and is used in all grand poems; Exam.

Qu'heureux étoit le siècle ou parmi l'innocence,
L'amour sans tyrannie exerçoit sa puissance;
Quand le ciel libéral versoit à pleines mains,
Tout ce dont l'abondance assouvit les humains.

* Cependant d'habiles Littérateurs se sont récriés contre cette prétendue loi; ils soutiennent qu'elle ne fait souvent que rendre la Poésie monotone, et la priver de toute harmonie imitative.

On peut aussi les arranger de manières qu'un vers masculin suive un ou deux féminins, ou qu'un vers féminin suive un ou deux masculins *; Exem.

We may also dispose them so that one masculine verse shall follow one or two feminines, and one feminine verse one or two masculines; Exam.

Damon, dans tout ce qu'on nomme
Vulgairement un malheur,
On s'abuse, il n'est pour l'homme
De vrai mal que la douleur.
L'exile, l'obscur naissance,
La servile dépendance,
Le mépris, l'oppression
La pauvreté qu'on déteste,
Le trépas, et tout le reste,
Sont des maux d'opinion.

Les vers disposés en *rimes croisées*, comme les quatre premiers du dernier exemple, sont d'usage pour l'Ode, le Sonnet, et le Rondeau. Ceux qui sont disposés en *rimes mêlées*, c'est-à-dire, lorsqu'on n'observe point d'autre règle que de ne pas mettre de suite plus de deux vers masculins ou féminins, servent pour les Stances, l'Epigramme, les Fables, &c

Verses that are disposed in cross-rhymes, like the four first of the last example, are in use for the Ode, the Sonnet, and the Rondeau. Such as are disposed in mixed rhymes, that is, when we observe no other rule than not to put in succession more than two masculine or feminine verses, are of use for Stanzas, Epigrams, Fables, Madrigals, &c.

On peut quelquefois met-

We may sometimes intro-

* Mais il faut éviter de placer de suite deux rimes ou masculines ou féminines, qui ne riment point ensemble; quoique ce soit une licence que plusieurs Poètes se permettent en certaines occasions.

tre plus de deux vers ayant la même rime, mais il ne faut pas qu'ils soient tous de suite; on doit les arranger comme dans le morceau suivant :

duce more than two verses with the same rhyme, but they must not follow each other; they are to be disposed after the following manner :

Exemple de l'Europe, ô Londres, heureuse terre,
Ainsi que vos tyrans, vous avez su chasser
Les préjugés honteux qui nous livrent la guerre.
C'est-là qu'on fait tout dire, & tout récompenser :
Nul art n'est méprisé, tout succès a sa gloire ;
Le vainqueur de Tallard, le fils de la victoire,
Le sublime Dryden, & le sage Addison,
Et la charmante Ophits & l'immortel Newton,
Ont part également au temple de mémoire ;
Et *Lecœur* à Londres auroit eu des tombeaux
Parmi les beaux esprits, les Rois & les Héros.

Voici en quoi consistent les règles générales qu'il y a à observer à l'égard de notre Poësie ; ainsi comme il n'en faut point davantage pour mon dessein, je renvoie ceux qui veulent de plus longues dissertations, sur ce sujet, au *Traité de la Poësie*, par M. Gaullier, et à l'Art poétique de Boileau ; dans lesquels ces principes sont plus détaillés.

Herein consist the general rules that, are to be observed with respect to our Poetry ; so that as there is no necessity for any more to answer my design, I refer such as desire longer dissertations on this subject to the Traité de la Poësie, by Mr. Gaullier, and Boileau's Art of Poetry ; wherein these principles are discussed more at large.

F I N I S.

BOOKS *published by the same* AUTHOR.

And sold by J. NOURSE, in the Strand;
and G. ROBINSON, in Paternoster-Row.

- I. SYLLABAIRE FRANCOIS, or a French Spelling-Book, calculated to lead young Beginners, with Ease, from the Knowledge of single Letters to the Reading of the longest and most difficult Polysyllables, &c. The whole in French and English; 3d Edition.—
Price 1s.
- II. ANALYSE DES SONS, &c. or Principles of the French Pronunciation and Orthography, in which all the single and combined Sounds of the French Language are described and alphabetically exhibited in French & English, with useful Notes, and Observations extracted out of the best Authors; 3d Edition.—
Price 1s.
- III. THE PRACTICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR, containing all that is necessary to be learned to acquire a competent Knowledge of that Language; comprised in a rational and clear Method; 3d Edition.—
Price 2s.
- IV. MODELS of LETTERS, in French and English, designed for the Instruction of those who are desirous of acquiring the true Style, and exact Manner of *French* epistolary Correspondence; 2d Edition.—
Price 4s.
- V. A DICTIONARY, English and French, and French and English, containing the Signification of of all the Words of established Usage, with their grammatical Accidents: Upon a Plan calculated to avoid Prolixity, and save young Learners Trouble.—
Price 5s.

T H E

THE
R U D I M E N T S
OF THE
ITALIAN LANGUAGE,
W H E R E I N

The Parts, that are fundamental and necessary for Beginners, are displayed in a regular and comprehensive Method; and illustrated with grammatical Remarks, and explanatory Notes, for the use of those who attempt to learn this Language without the assistance of a Master; &c.

